



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

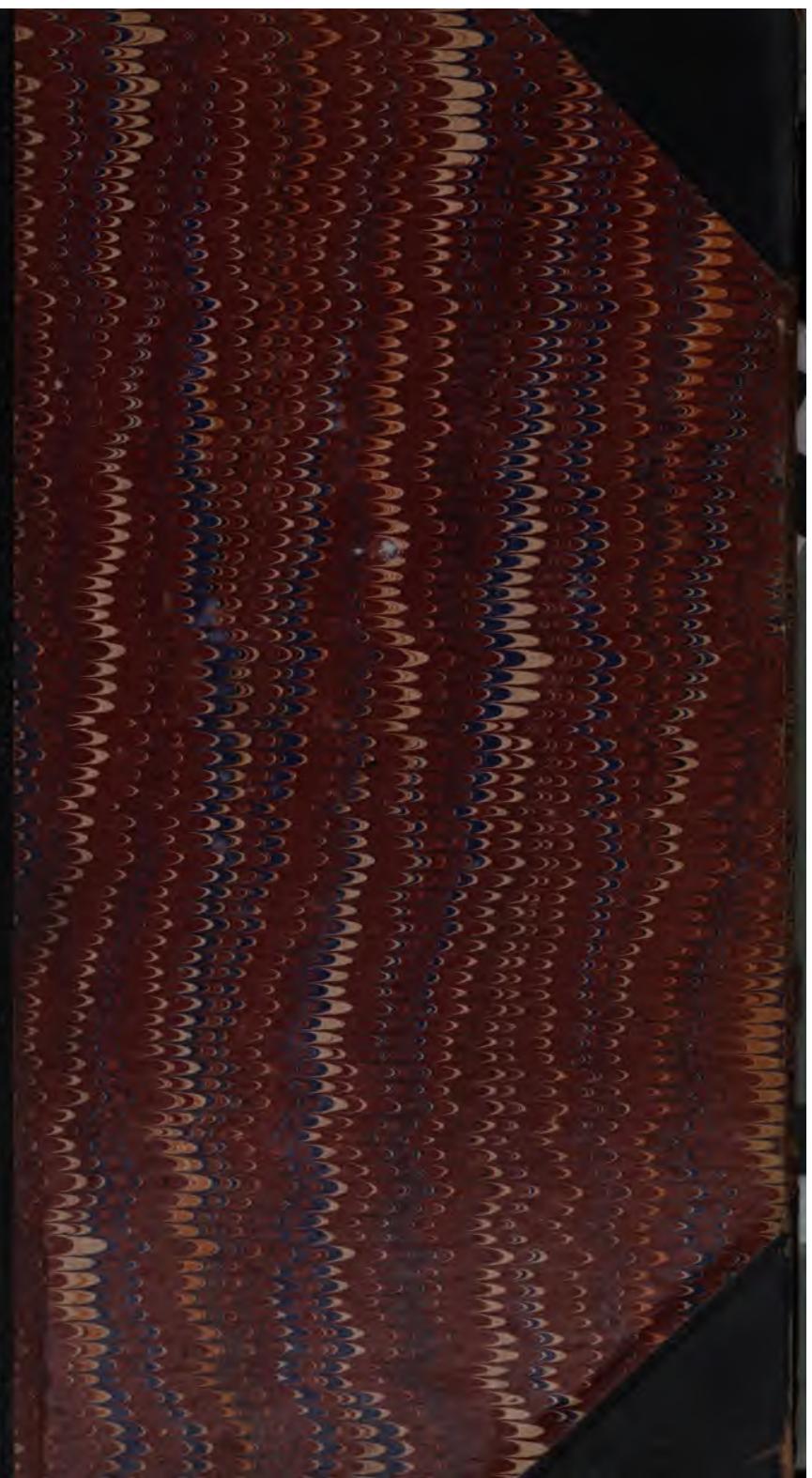
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

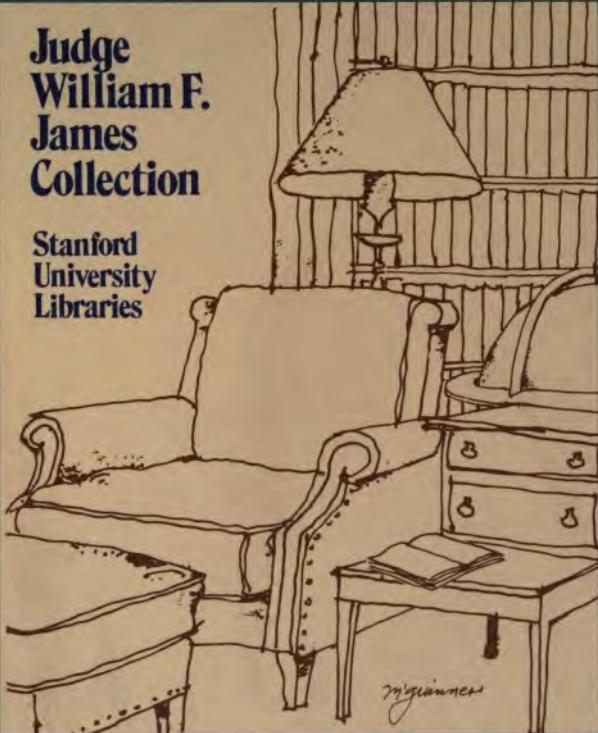
### About Google Book Search

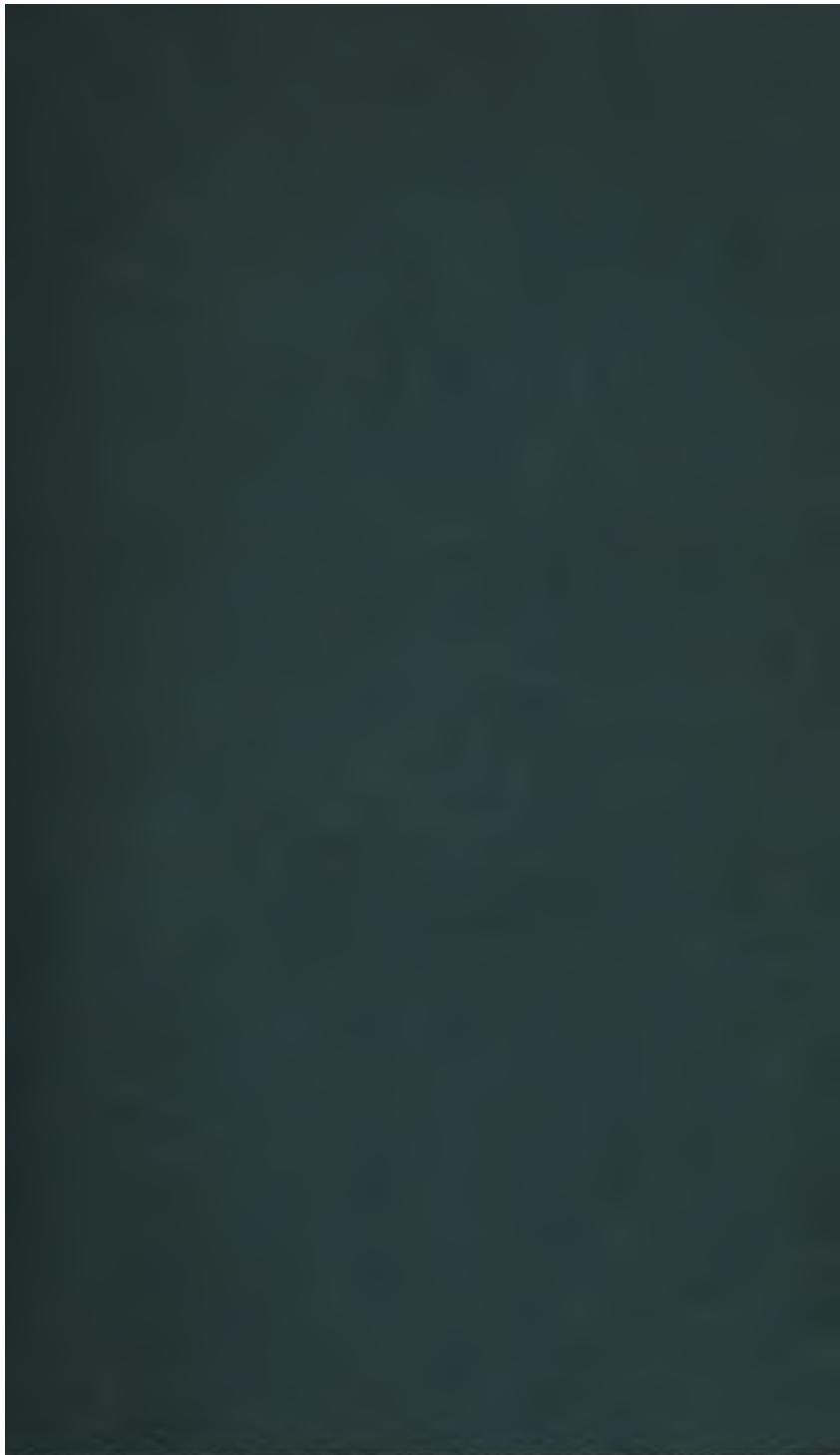
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Judge  
William F.  
James  
Collection

Stanford  
University  
Libraries











SIR JOHN FROISSART'S  
CHRONICLES  
OF  
ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,  
AND THE  
ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.  
TO THE CROWNING OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,  
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

---

BY THOMAS JOHNS.

---

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,  
He molte rehers, as neighe as ever he can,  
Everich worke, if it be in his charge,  
All speke he never so rydely and so large;  
Or elles he molte tellen his tale untrewe,  
Or seinen shinges, or hiden wordes neke.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,  
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,  
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,  
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. X.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;  
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1808.

D113

F77

1868

v.10

THE  
CONTENTS  
OF  
THE TENTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. Sir John de Chatel-Morant brings from England the Truces for three Years, sealed by King Richard and his Allies. —Lewis of Anjou, King of Sicily, is betrothed and married to a Daughter of the King of Arragon	Page 1
II. The King of France is desirous of visit- ing the distant Parts of his Kingdom. —At the Request of the Lord de Coucy, he orders the Duke of Ireland out of France	6
III. King Charles of France visits his Uncle the Duke of Burgundy, and Pope Cle- ment at Avignon	11
IV. The King of France sends the Dukes of Berry and Burgundy to their Homes, to their great Dissatisfaction, and con- tinues his Journey from Avignon to Languedoc	16
V. During the Time King Charles of France is at Montpellier, three of his Cham- berlains undertake to hold a Touna- ment near to Calais, against all Comers	20

CHAP. VI. During the King of France's Residence at Beziers, Accusations are made against Bethisac, Treasurer to the Duke of Berry.—Thinking to be sent to the Pope and escape Punishment, he confesses himself a Heretic and Sodomite, but is transferred over, by the Official at Beziers, to the secular Power, and burnt	37
VII. When the King of France is at Toulouse, he summons the Count de Foix, who, on his Arrival, pays him Homage for his County of Foix	50
VIII. The King of France and his Brother, the Duke of Touraine, wager which shall arrive the soonest at Paris, from Montpellier, each attended by only one Knight	60
IX. The Death of Pope Urban at Rome, called the Anti Pope.—Pope Clement writes to the King of France, his Uncles, and the University of Paris on the Occasion.—The Election of Pope Boniface by the Roman Cardinals	64
X. The Surrender of the strong Castle of Ventadour in Limousin, that had been the chief Residence of Geoffry Tetenoir	69
XI. Three French Knights hold a Tournament at Saint Inglevere, near Calais, and defend the Lists, for Thirty Days, against all Comers, from England and elsewhere	88

CHAP. XII. The Duke of Bourbon is appointed  
Chief of an Expedition to Africa,  
that is undertaken by several Knights  
of France and England at the Soli-  
citation of the Genoese - - - 126

XIII. Aymerigot Marcel, Captain of the Pil-  
laging Companies, having fortified  
La Roche de Vandais, on the Borders  
of Limousin and Auvergne, is be-  
sieged by the Viscount de Maux, by  
Command of the King of France - 134

XIV. Aymerigot Marcel endeavours, but in  
vain, to raise the Siege of La Roche  
de Vandais, by Letters and Messages  
to the King of England, the Duke of  
Lancaster, the Viscount de Meaux,  
and even to the Duke of Berry - 153

XV. Aymerigot Marcel having left La  
Roche de Vandais, to seek succour  
from other Pillagers, his Lieutenant,  
Guyot du Sel, is surprised by an  
Ambuscade, and the Fort surren-  
ders on Capitulation - - - 171

XVI. The Messengers from England, hear-  
ing of the Surrender of La Roche  
de Vandais, take Leave of the Duke  
of Berry.—Aymerigot retires to the  
House of a Relation, called Tour-  
nemine, who betrays him to the  
King of France.—He is carried to  
Paris, and there beheaded and his  
Body quartered - - - 178

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII. The Christian Lords weigh Anchor,  
and leave the Island of Comino,  
in order to lay siege to the Town  
of Africa.—The Manner in which  
they conduct themselves - - - 186

XVIII. The Conduct of the Saracens during  
the Siege of the Town of Africa.  
—They send to demand from the  
French the Cause of their making  
War against them - - - 200

XIX. Some Miracles are shewn to the Saracens,  
as they attempt to attack the  
Camp of the Christians.—Several  
Skirmishes during the Siege.—The  
Climate becomes unwholesome, and  
other Accidents befall the Besiegers 206

XX. A Challenge is sent by the Saracens  
to offer combat of Ten against Ten  
Christians.—The Saracens fail in  
their Engagement.—The Town of  
Africa is stormed, but unsuccessfully,  
and with the Loss of many worthy  
Men - - - 212

XXI. A grand Tournament is holden at  
London.—The King of England  
gives splendid Entertainments during  
the Siege of the Town of Africa  
by the Christians.—The  
Count D'Osirevant receives the  
Order of the Garter, which displeases  
the King of France - - - 222

XXII. The Siege of Africa is raised.—The  
Cause of it.—The Knights and  
Squires return to their own countries 236

CHAP. XXIII. King Charles of France proposes to march to Italy, to form an Union of the Church by Force, and thence to Barbary.—Ambassadors from England offer Proposals for a Peace between him and King Richard.—The Death of John King of Castille.—He is succeeded by his son Henry, who is crowned King, though but Nine Years of Age - - - 245

XXIV. Of the Expedition of Count John d'Armagnac into Lombardy.—His Death at the Siege of Alexandria - - - - 257

XXV. The King of England is anxious to make a Peace with France.—The Duke of Gloucester throws Obstacles in the way.—Sir Peter de Craon, formerly the Favourite of King Charles and his Brother the Duke of Touraine, incurs their Hatred, and takes Refuge with the Duke of Brittany - - - - 278

XXVI. The Death of the young Count Louis de Chastillon, Son to Count Guy de Blois.—The sudden Death of Gaston Count de Foix - - - 288

XXVII. Sir Evan de Foix, Bastard-Son to the late Count, intending to carry away privately the Treasure of his Father, is discovered by the Townsmen of Orthes, who, however, promise every Assistance to him and to his Brother that is not incompatible with the true Heir to the Count de Foix, the Viscount de Chastelbon 292

**CHAP. XXVIII.** The Corpse of the Count de Foix  
is brought from Rion to Orthes.  
—The King of France sends the  
Bishop of Noyon and the Lord  
de la Riviere into the County of  
Foix, to make Arrangements, ac-  
cording to the Decree of the  
Council - - - 299

**XXIX.** The Viscount de Chastel-Bon,  
Heir to the Count de Foix, at-  
tends his Funeral at Orthes.—  
He is advised to send to the be-  
fore-named Commissioners from  
France, to demand Possession of  
the Succession which had fallen  
to him by the Death of the Count  
de Foix: He afterwards sends,  
to the same Purport, to the King  
of France - - - 302

**XXX.** The King of France and the Duke  
of Brittany meet at Tours, to  
settle their Differences. — Am-  
bassadors from England come  
thither also to negociate a Peace 315

**XXXI.** Sir Roger d'Espaign and Sir  
Espaign du Lyon, Ambassadors  
from the Viscount de Chastel-  
bon, practise so successfully  
with the Court of France, that  
he is declared Heir and Suc-  
cessor to the Count de Foix by  
Letters Patent from the King of  
France - - - 323

**CHAP. XXXII.** During the residence of the King of France and Duke of Brittany at Tours, their Differences are partly accommodated by Means of the Marriages of the Duke's Son with a Princess of France, and a Son of John of Brittany, Son to the late Lord Charles de Blois, with a Daughter of the Duke of Brittany - 329

**XXXIII.** The Count de Blois and Mary of Namur, his Countess, sell to the Duke of Touraine the County of Blois with other Lands.—The Viscount de Chastelbon takes Possession of the Inheritance of the late Count de Foix - 335

**XXXIV.** A grand Assembly at Amiens, of the King and Lords of France and England, to treat of a Peace between the two Kingdoms - 344

**XXXV.** The French and English Lords, not being able to agree on the Terms of Peace, prolong the Truce one Year.—The English, on their Return, are accompanied by the Lord de Chasteau-Morant, to bring back the King of England's final Answer - 352

**XXXVI.** The first Illness of King Charles.—Count Bernard d'Armagnac does Homage to the King.—The Lord de Chastelmorant returns from England with an Answer respecting Peace - 357

CHAP. XXXVII. Sir Peter de Craon, through Malevolence, waylays Sir Oliver de Clisson, beats and severely wounds him. — The King and Council are greatly angered thereat - - - 360

XXXVIII. The King of France sends his own Physicians and Surgeons to visit the Constable during the Night.—He orders the Provost of Paris to pursue Sir Peter de Craon, who had fled for Refuge to the Duke of Brittany.—Some of his Men, having remained at Paris, are executed - - - 370

THE  
CHRONICLES  
OF  
*ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.*

---

CHAP. I.

SIR JOHN DE CHATEL-MORANT BRINGS FROM  
ENGLAND THE TRUCES FOR THREE YEARS,  
SEALED BY KING RICHARD AND HIS ALLIES.  
—LEWIS OF ANJOU, KING OF SICILY, IS BE-  
TROTHED AND MARRIED TO A DAUGHTER  
OF THE KING OF ARRAGON.

AFTER this grand festival, and when the lords and ladies, who had assisted at it, were returned to their castles, the lord de Châtel-morant, whom the lord de Saint-Pol had left in England, arrived at Paris with the truces, signed by the king of England and his allies. He delivered to the king and his ministers the charter of the truce that was to last for three years, and read aloud its contents in the presence of the lord de Coucy, who was lieutenant for the king, to guard and defend all the country, from the Dordogne to the sea, including Auvergne and Limousin. All who

should infringe, or any way break this treaty, or cause it to be broken, whatever were his rank, would be considered as a traitor, and incur punishment of death. The lord de Coucy had also a copy delivered to him, to shew, if necessary, to those garrisons in Ventadour, Chaluçet, Orbeſi\*, Donzach†, who were carrying on war under name of the English, that they might not have any cause of excuse, and incur the penalty, should they continue their warfare.

The lord Lewis de Sancerre, marshal of France, had it in like manner read to him, and a copy given to him. This was very necessary; for he was lieutenant over all the country of Languedoc, from the river Rhône and Avignon, within which are many valuable estates and lordships, as far as the Dordogne. His government contained the seneschalships of Beaucaire, Carcassone, Toulouse, Rouergue, Agen, Quercy, Bigorre, Perigord and Limoges, where were many forts and castles that minded not the truce, but continued to carry on the war, such as Châtel-cuillier, and the strong castle of Lourdes, on the frontiers of Béarn, which kept the neighbourhood under continual alarms.

About this time, there was a treaty of marriage on foot, between the lord Lewis d'Anjou, son to the late duke, who styled himself king of Naples, Sicily, Jerusalem, and count of Provence, and the daughter of the king of Arragon. The queen

---

\* Orbeſi,—Orbeſſan, a village in Armagnac.

† Donzach,—a village in Armagnac.

of Naples went to visit the pope at Avignon, carrying with her the young lord Lewis, and there met the lord de Coucy, who was much rejoiced at her arrival. The queen was handsomely received by the pope and cardinals; of which she was indeed deserving, for she was an active bustling lady, and one who did not sleep over her interests. She entreated the lord de Coucy to escort her son to Arragon, and to remain with him until he were married. He replied,—‘ Certainly, madam, there is not a voyage that, for seven years past, I would more willingly have undertaken than to Sicily and Naples, more particularly in company with my lord your son, if I have the consent of our lord and king.’ ‘ Many thanks, lord de Coucy,’ said the queen: ‘ you shew us your good inclinations; but, for the present, it will be sufficient if you will accompany our son to Arragon. The queen of Arragon will be very happy to see you, for your daughter is married to her brother, sir Henry de Bar.’

The lord de Coucy cheerfully agreed to undertake this journey; and the king of Sicily, having made his preparations, took leave of pope Clement, and of his mother, with many tears. Their hearts were wrung, not indeed without cause, at this separation, for he was going to a far country, and it was uncertain when they should meet again. It had been settled, that instantly after the marriage had taken place, the young king and queen were to embark at Barcelona, and sail as expeditiously

tiouly as they could for Naples or any other part of that country.

The young king of Sicily was handsomely attended, and, having passed through Montpellier and Beziers, came to Narbonne, where he and his company were honourably received by the viscount. Having refreshed their horses for one day, they continued their route towards Perpignan, the first town of Arragon. News of his arrival had reached the court of Arragon, and the queen had sent proper persons to receive him and his attendants, and shew them all respect, so that, wherever they passed, they were well entertained, and all their expenses paid. The viscount de Roquebertin and sir Raymond de Baighes were their conductors.

They continued their journey until they arrived at Barcelona, where the king, queen and princess were expecting them. The young king Lewis was very kindly received; and the queen was particularly pleased on seeing the lord de Coucy, and thanked her future son-in-law for having brought him with him, adding, that every thing would fare the better for it.

The marriage was performed and consummated between these two persons; but, as winter was approaching, the sea-voyage was deferred, because at such a time the sea is stormy and dangerous. They said they would collect all the purveyances during the winter, and embark in the beginning of the ensuing month of March. The lord de Coucy was perfectly well received by the king and

and queen of Arragon; but, having had letters from the king of France, ordering him to return, he took his leave of them, and of the young king and the queen of Sicily, as well as of the lords of Arragon, and set out for France. If he had had time, he would have returned by Avignon; but he sent his excuses to the pope and queen of Naples, and went straight to Auvergne.

At the time of this marriage of the king of Sicily with the princess of Arragon, many treaties were concluded between him and the Arragonians, who were to assist him with men and galleys in the recovery of his kingdom. They were to convey him to Naples, with two hundred spears, one thousand cross-bows, and the same number of infantry armed with brigandines, who were to serve him at their own charges, during the war, until he should have full possession of Naples, Sicily and its dependencies, la Puglia, Calabria and the city of Gaieta, the residence of Margaret de Durazzo, who claimed all these territories as her own.

When the sweet month of March was arrived, and the winds were become calm, the waters smooth, and the trees once more clothed in green, and all purveyances ready and embarked, as well as the men at arms who were to be of this expedition, the young couple took leave of the king and queen of Arragon. The queen with tears saw them depart, and recommended them to the particular care of the count de Roddes, a very valiant knight, and sir Raymond de Baighes. They

promised special obedience to the queen's wishes, although the count d'Orghel and the count de la Lune were their superiors and had the command of the convoy.

There were on board these galleys fifteen hundred spears, two thousand cross-bows, and two thousand lusty varlets armed with pikes and shields. They were in such force the better to resist their enemies, and any adventurers they might encounter at sea; for the voyage from Barcelona to Naples is long, and Margaret de Durazzo, their adversary, might have had intelligence of their motions, and stationed a fleet accordingly: they therefore were desirous of having strength enough to oppose any she could bring against them.

We will now leave the affairs of Sicily, and return to those of France, which is our principal object, and to several other events.

---

## CHAP. II.

THE KING OF FRANCE IS DESIROUS OF VISITING THE DISTANT PARTS OF HIS KINGDOM.—AT THE REQUEST OF THE LORD DE COUCY, HE ORDERS THE DUKE OF IRELAND OUT OF FRANCE.

WHEN the king of France saw that his kingdom was now at peace, in consequence of the truce with England, he had a great desire to visit

visit the more distant parts of it, and particularly Languedoc. The lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier, at that time his most intimate advisers, urged him to visit the pope and cardinals at Avignon, who were desirous of that honour, and thence to go to Toulouse, saying that a king, when young, should visit his realm, to acquaint himself with its inhabitants and inquire how they have been governed, as it would redound to his profit and glory, and cause himself to be more beloved by his subjects.

The king was so inclined, and willingly attended to all matters of government. The lord de la Riviere, who was but lately returned from those parts, told him that his subjects in the seneschalships of Toulouse, Carcassone and Beaucaire, were impatient to see him; for that the duke of Berry, during his government of that country, had sorely oppressed them with taxes and other impositions, through the means of one of his familiars, called Bethifac \*, who had pity on none,

---

\* 'John Bethifac was one of the chief advisers of the duke of Berry, and was accused with Tiétac and de Bar, two other domestics of this prince, of having raised enormous levies from the Languedocians, over whom the duke was governor, and under his name of having committed great plunder and much violence, and of having put large sums into their own pockets. This report gave rise to the following pasquinade, that is even current in our times:

'Tiétac, de Bar, et Bethifac,  
Ont mis l'argent du roi au sac.'

none, and that they were quite ruined. On this account, therefore, it would be proper for him to go thither, and he could then summon the count de Foix, whom he was so anxious to see, to meet him at Toulouse.

The king, having assented to this proposal, ordered immense purveyances to be provided for him on the road he was to travel. He signified to his uncle and aunt, the duke and duchess of Burgundy, that, as he passed through their lands, he should be glad to see their children, his cousins; and that he would bring with him his brother of Touraine, and his uncle of Bourbon.

This news of the king's intended visit to Burgundy was highly pleasing to the duke and duchess. They had proclaimed a festival and tournament to be holden at Dijon, and sent invitations to the knights and squires of Savoy and the adjoining countries, who made their preparations accordingly. During the time all these different arrangements were making for the king's journey to Avig-

---

' Bethisac suffered the punishment of his crimes; but the duke of Berry having claimed him as his domestic, those who had sworn his ruin persuaded him to own he had erred in several articles of faith, which would cause him to be transferred to the bishop, and the duke could the easier save him. Crime often stupifies. Bethisac was simple enough to fall into their trap. The bishop of Beziers had him tried, and given over to the secular arm as an heretic and sodomite. This wretch was burnt alive, which was, says Mézeray, a *feu de joie* for the people whom he had horribly tormented. History does not say whence he sprung, but probably he was of low origin, who wanted to rise too rapidly.'—*Dictionnaire Historique*.

non and Languedoc, other events happened in France.

You have heard how the duke of Ireland, formerly earl of Oxford, had been driven out and banished England, for his demerits, by the power of the uncles of king Richard, but especially by the duke of Gloucester, who had been more bitter against him than all the rest; and how he had fled to Holland, and had remained a short time at Dordrecht, when he was forced thence by duke Albert, the lord of Dordrecht and Holland, who refused him a residence on his lands, from a wish not to act contrary to the will of his cousins in England, notwithstanding king Richard had written to him in his favour.

The duke of Ireland, being forced to depart, went to Utrecht, where he resided some time, and might have staid there as long as he pleased; for Utrecht is a free town to receive whoever lists, if they pay for what they want, and this duke had a sufficiency of money; for he had received, of the constable, sixty thousand francs, as the balance of the ransom of John of Brittany. You have also heard how the king of France had sent him passports to come to France, having invited him thither, and where he had remained for more than a year, the king shewing him very great attention, because he was a foreigner.

There is nothing but what one is tired of. True it is, that, notwithstanding this duke was so well received by the king, the lord de Coucy mortally hated him, and not without reason; for although,

in other affairs, he shewed great good sense, honour and liberality, he had behaved infamously to the daughter of the lord de Coucy, whom he had married, and without any reasons, except temptation and deceit, he had divorced and taken another wife, who was from Bohemia, and one of the ladies attached to the queen of England. The king and queen had improperly and sinfully consented to this ; and pope Urban had, at their entreaties, sent from Rome a dispensation for the marriage. This new marriage not only wounded the reputation of the duke of Ireland, but was the principal cause of his ruin.

The lord de Coucy was one of the king of France's council, and very deservedly in favour, from the services he had done, and was willing to do his country: he therefore, with the assistance of his friends, sir Oliver de Clisson, the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier, prevailed on the king to dismiss the duke of Ireland. Orders were, in consequence, sent him from the king, to choose any other residence but France, and that he should be safely conducted out of that kingdom.

The duke of Ireland perceived they were tired of him, and that he ran daily risks, from the lord de Coucy and from his relations. He therefore thought it would be best for him to leave France as soon as possible, and retire to Brabant; and begged of the king to write to the duchess of Brabant, that he might live peaceably in her country. The king cheerfully complied with his request, and wrote to his aunt, the duchess, who at his desire assented to it.

The

The duke of Ireland was escorted by the king of France's officers as far as Louvain, where he fixed his residence: he went, indeed, at times, to a castle near Louvain, which he had borrowed from a knight of Brabant. The archbishop of York, who was of the house of Neville, lived with the duke, as he had been banished England for the same cause as himself. The archbishop's family were very powerful in Northumberland, from their property and connections. These two lords, as I have heard, remained at Louvain as long as they lived, for they could never obtain favour with the uncles of the king of England, and there died. I never heard more of them.

---

### CHAP. III.

#### KING CHARLES OF FRANCE VISITS HIS UNCLE THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY, AND POPE CLE- MENT AT AVIGNON.

**A**BOUT Michaelmas 1399, the king of France set out from the castle of Beauté, near Paris, where he left the queen, and took the road to Troyés in Champagne in his way to Burgundy. He was accompanied by his uncle the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Touraine, the lord de Coucy and many other knights, and continued his journey until he arrived at Dijon.

The

The duke of Burgundy, and his son the count de Nevers, had gone as far as Châtillon sur Seine to meet the king. On his arrival at Dijon, he was received with every respect and affection by the duchess of Burgundy, the countess of Nevers, and all who had come thither to do him honour. From love to the king, many ladies and damsels, whose company he preferred, were come to Dijon, such as the lady of Sully, the ladies of Vergy and Pagny, and several others, handsome and gay, and richly dressed.

The dancings and carrollings instantly began : the ladies exerted their talents in singing and dancing to amuse the king, the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Touraine and the lord de Coucy. On the Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, were tilts gallantly performed, and prizes given to the most deserving. The king remained eight whole days at Dijon, thus amusing himself : on the tenth, I believe he took leave of the duke and duchess of Burgundy and their family. It was the intention of the duke of Burgundy instantly to follow the king, and remain with him ; and, on this being settled, he departed from Dijon, having bidden adieu to the ladies and damsels.

The king continued his journey until he came to Villeneuve, near Avignon, where his palace had been prepared. The cardinals of Amiens\*,

---

\* John de la Grange was minister of state under Charles V. who procured him the purple. He was covetous and ambitious.

Aisgrenel,

Aisgrenel \*, Saint Marcel †, Neufchastel ‡, and upwards of thirteen others, went out to meet the king, as they were rejoiced at his arrival. The duke of Berry was already at Avignon, and lodged in the palace of the pope; but he came to Villeneuve to meet his nephew, and fixed his quarters at the hôtel of Arras, called Amontais, on the road to Montpellier.

The duke of Burgundy arrived the day after the king, at Villeneuve, down the Rhône, for at Lyons he had embarked on board a large barge.

These three dukes, being assembled, determined to accompany the king in his visit to the pope in his palace. Having had every thing prepared accordingly, the king of France, attended by his brother, his three uncles, and twelve cardinals, crossed the Rhône at nine o'clock, and went to the palace, where pope Clement was waiting for him in full consistory, seated in his robes, on his papal chair.

When the king came into his presence, he bowed; and, when near to him, the pope rose up, and the king kissed his hands and mouth. The pope then seated himself, and made the king fit by him on a handsome seat that had been prepared for the occasion. The four dukes, after having kissed the pope's hands and mouth, seated

\* Not in the list of cardinals.

† Q. if not Marcellin.

‡ John de Neufchastel,—created cardinal by pope Clement. For further particulars, see Moreri, &c.

themselves

themselves also among the cardinals. When these ceremonies were over, it was dinner-time ; they therefore went into the other apartments of the pope and the hall, where the tables were spread. When they had washed, the pope took his place at a table alone, in much state. The king was placed at another table below that of the pope, and alone also. The cardinals and dukes seated themselves according to their rank.

The dinner was splendid, plentiful and long. When over, wine and spices were brought ; and the king then retired to an apartment that had been prepared for him in the palace, as did the dukes to theirs, for all of them had chambers, properly ornamented, provided for them, and which they inhabited as long as they staid at Avignon.

On the fifth day after the arrival of the king of France at Avignon, the young count de Savoye, cousin to the king, and nephew to the duke of Bourbon, came thither. The king was pleased at his coming, for he had seen him as he passed through Lyons, and had invited him to Avignon. The king of France, the duke of Touraine and the count de Savoye, being young and giddy, neither could nor would refrain from dancing, carolling and amusing themselves with the ladies and damsels of Avignon, though they were in the pope's palace and among the cardinals ; and the count of Geneva, brother to the pope, was their master of the revels. The king made such mag-

nificent presents to the ladies, that they all praised his liberality.

The pope and cardinals were much rejoiced at this visit of the king of France, as indeed they had good reason to be; for without his support they would have been in little estimation. There were no kings in Christendom who paid him obedience but such as were allied to France. The kings of Castille and Scotland acknowledged him for pope, as did the king of Arragon, through the intercession of the queen Jolande de Bar, who was cousin german to the king of France, otherwise he would have remained neuter like his father. You may therefore suppose the pope and his cardinals were happy in receiving the king of France; for all they had to depend on was obtained through his favour.

The king of France remained, I know not how many days, with the pope and cardinals, revelling and amusing himself. The pope, on this joyful occasion, gave pardons to the clergy who were in his courts, and plenary indulgences to all for one month to come. He likewise presented the king with the nominations to all his cathedrals and other churches, and in each church the reversion of two prebends, deferring all his former promises, that these now made to the king might have the precedence, which was fortunate for many of the French clergy, who were thus provided. He gave also reversions to the dukes of Touraine, Berry and Burgundy, and the lord de Coucy, which threw back all those he had formerly promised;

mised; and the pope was so courteous and liberal on this occasion, that none went away discontented.

---

#### CHAP. IV.

THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY TO THEIR HOMES, TO THEIR GREAT DISSATISFACTION, AND CONTINUES HIS JOURNEY FROM AVIGNON TO LANGUEDOC.

THE king of France resided with the pope about eight days, during which time his holiness had fully discussed with him his situation, and what trouble the other pope at Rome gave him, in depriving him of his right, in the schism he caused in the church. The king was willing to do every thing in his power to relieve him, and said that, on his return to France, he would endeavour to provide a remedy, and exert himself to unite the church. Upon this he took leave of the pope, and went to Villeneuve, as did his brother and his uncles of Berry and Burgundy.

The king entertained at dinner all the cardinals and the count of Geneva, after which he took leave of them, returning them his thanks for their attentions, saying, he should, on the morrow, begin his journey to Montpellier.

The

The cardinals having left the king, it was determined in council, that he should set out very early, in company with his brother and the duke of Bourbon. He took leave, therefore, of his uncles of Berry and Burgundy, bidding them return to their own estates, as he had not then any further occasion for them, intending to go as far as Toulouse, and summon thither the count de Foix to meet him. His uncles were much discontented at this order; but the king's council was at that time so formed, that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy had no voice in it, nor weight, but in trifles. The government of Languedoc had been taken from the duke of Berry, and divided into seneschalships, which was not only more profitable to the king, but more agreeable to the country; for the duke of Berry, during his government, had grievously oppressed the inhabitants, by heavy taxes, as I shall more fully relate, for it is deserving to be detailed.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were very melancholy, when they found the king was determined they should not accompany him in his journey; but they dissembled their thoughts from all but each other, and thus conversed: 'The king is going to Languedoc to hold inquisitions on those who have governed it, and to treat with the count de Foix, (who is the proudest person existing, and never loved nor esteemed, though neighbours, the kings of France, England, Castille, Arragon or Navarre,) and only takes with him la Riviere, le Mercier, Montaigu and the bègue

de Villaines. 'What do you say to this, brother?' added the duke of Berry. 'Our nephew is young, and if he follow young counsel he will be deceived, and the end will not be prosperous, as you will see. For the present, we must dissemble this affront; but the time will come, when those who have advised it shall repent of it, as well as the king. Let them go whither they please, in God's name: we will return to our own home; and, so long as we are united, they cannot do us any injury, for we are the greatest personages in France.' Such was the language of these two dukes.

The king of France left Villeneuve early in the morning, for Nîmes, where he arrived to dinner; but his uncles and the lord de Coucy staid with the pope, at Avignon, four days longer, when they all separated, and each went different ways. The day the king dined at Nîmes, he lay at Lunel, and the next day dined at Montpellier, which was but three short leagues distant. He was joyfully received by the citizens, ladies and damsels, who were desirous to see him, and offered him magnificent and rich presents; for Montpellier is a powerful and wealthy town, full of merchandise, and was much valued by the king, when he had considered its importance. The citizens told him, it had been infinitely richer than he now found it, before the dukes of Anjou and Berry had plundered it, as they had severally done in their turn. The king compassionated them much for the losses they had sustained, and promised that he would have

have every grievance reformed, and the government placed on a different footing.

The citizens likewise addressed the king during his stay at Montpellier, saying, — ‘Sire, the poverty of this town is nothing to what you will see the farther you advance ; for this place has many resources in its commerce, which the inhabitants carry on by sea and land. In the seneschalships of Toulouse and Carcassonne, and in that part of the country, where these dukes have laid their hands, there is absolutely nothing ; for they have carried off every thing portable ; and you will find the inhabitants so poor that those who were in good circumstances have not wherewithal to cultivate their fields or vineyards. It is melancholy to see them, their wives and children ; for they had every year five or six taxes on their backs, and they compounded for a third, a half, and sometimes all their property was taken from them ; and no sooner was one tax paid than another was demanded. These two lords, your uncles, since they have had the government of Languedoc, have collected, as the accounts will prove, upwards of thirty thousand francs, from the country, beginning with Villeneuve, near Avignon, to the Touloufain, as far as the river Garonne, and turning back by the river Dordogne. Since the departure of the duke of Anjou to Naples, this government has been given back to the duke of Berry, and he has more severely oppressed the country, which he found rich and plentiful : the duke of Anjou made only the tithi pay, who were

well enabled to do so ; but the duke of Berry spares neither poor nor rich : he swallows up every thing by means of one Bethisac, his counsellor and treasurer, who is a native of Beziers, as you will hear from the complaints the poor will make to you, in crying out for vengeance against him.'

The king replied,—‘ May God forsake my soul, if I will not cheerfully listen to their complaints, and, before I return, provide a remedy for them. I will punish the wicked, and have an inquisition holden on the officers and servants of my uncles, who formerly have had this government; and those who have behaved ill shall be treated accordingly.’

---

## CHAP. V.

DURING THE TIME KING CHARLES OF FRANCE IS AT MONTPELLIER, THREE OF HIS CHAMBERLAINS UNDERTAKE TO HOLD A TOURNAMENT NEAR TO CALAIS, AGAINST ALL COMERS.

THE king of France refided at Montpellier upwards of twelve days, because the respect and amusements he enjoyed there from the citizens, ladies and damsels, pleased him greatly. Indeed, the king was at this time young and giddy : he therefore danced and carolled with these frisky ladies of Montpellier all night. He entertained

entertained them with handsome suppers and banquets, and presented to those most in his favour rings and clasps of gold. He acquired so greatly the love of the Montpellier ladies that some wished he had made a longer stay, for it was one continued revel and pastime the whole time he was there.

You know, or must have heard it noticed, that the intercourse of young gentlemen with the fair sex encourages sentiments of honour and a love of fame. I mention this, because there were with the king of France three gentlemen of great enterprise and valour, which they were probably induced to display from that intercourse, as I shall relate.

The names of these three knights were, sir Boucicaut the younger, sir Reginal de Roye and the lord de Saimpi. These knights were chamberlains to the king, and were much esteemed by him for their worth, for accoutring him so ably with his arms, and in other services, such as good knights owe to their lord.

While they were at Montpellier amusing themselves with the ladies and damsels, they were called upon to answer a challenge in the course of the ensuing summer: the principal cause of this, as I was informed, was as follows.

During the reign of king Charles V. of happy memory, an English knight of high birth and great renown, called sir Piers Courteney, came from England to Paris to challenge sir Guy de la Trimouille, in a combat before the king and lords

of France; and whoever else might wish to be spectators of it.

Sir Guy de la Trimouille accepted the challenge; and the king, with the duke of Burgundy and many of the great barons, were present at this combat. I believe they only ran one course with the lance; for the king would not suffer more to be done, to the great discontent of the English knight, who seemed desirous of pushing the combat to extremities. He was, however, appeased by fair speeches, saying, he ought to be satisfied, for he had done enough; and he was presented with very rich gifts by the king and the duke of Burgundy\*.

Perceiving he could do nothing more, sir Piers Courtenay set out on his return to Calais; and the lord de Clary, who at that time was a gay and lively knight, was ordered to escort him. They rode on until they came to Lucen †, where the countess de St. Pol, sister to king Richard of England, resided. The countess was rejoiced to see sir Piers Courtenay; for before her marriage with the count de St. Pol, she had been waited to his

---

\*Sir Piers Courtenay is mentioned by Dugdale, vol. i. p. 639. to have obtained licence, in the 7th Ric. II. to send various presents to the king and lords of France, in return for the honours they had paid him in his combat with a knight of that country. This knight was probably sir Guy de la Trimouille. The licence is in the *Fœdera*.

†Lucen. Q. Luzeuz, a town in the comté de St. Pol.

cousin the lord Courteney\*, but he had died young, and the English called her lady Courteney rather than countess of St. Pol. While there, the countess, in the course of conversation, asked sir Piers what he thought of the kingdom of France: he replied,—‘ Certainly, madam, France is very extensive, rich and plentiful, and well guarded. In our country we do not form a true estimate of it.’ ‘ And are you pleased with the reception the lords of France have given you? have they not entertained you handsomely?’ ‘ To be sure, madam, I am perfectly contented as to the reception I have had; but, in regard to the cause of my having crossed the sea, they have but shabbily acquitted themselves: and I must say, that if the lord de Clary, who is a French knight, had come to England, and challenged any one, however high his rank, it would have been accepted, and the terms faithfully fulfilled to his utmost pleasure; but this has been refused me. True it is, that sir Guy de la Trimouille and myself were brought into the lists; but, when we had run one course with the lance, I was stopped, and ordered from the king to attempt nothing more, for that we had done enough. I therefore say, madam, and shall say and maintain it wherever I go, that I have not met any one able to oppose me in arms; and

---

\* This person was Hugh Courtenay, son of the earl of Devonshire; but he died before his father, and of course did not inherit the earldom. His widow Maude, daughter of sir Thomas Holland, married Waleran count de St. Pol.—DUGDALE.

that it has not been my fault, but rests solely with the knights of France.'

The lord de Clary, who was present, marked this speech in his memory, and with great difficulty held his tongue, on account of having the english knight under his care. The countess of St. Pol replied,—‘ My lord, you will leave France with much honour, having complied with the request of the king of France, not to proceed further in your combat; for you would have been unable to do more contrary to his will. You cannot incur any blame in this matter; and all those on each side of the sea that shall hear it told, will give you more praise than blame: I therefore beg of you to rest satisfied.’ ‘ Lady,’ said the knight, ‘ that I will do; and not give myself any further care or trouble about it.’

Here the conversation on this matter ended; and other subjects were discoursed on, during the day and night they remained. On the morrow, sir Piers Courteney took leave of the countess de St. Pol, who presented him with a handsome clasp of gold, and another to the lord de Clary, as being his companion, and because the english knight was under his care and escort. They left Lucen early in the morning, and took the road to Boulogne, where they lay that night, and the next day rode through Marquise to Calais.

Between Boulogne and Calais there are but seven short leagues, and a good road; and at the distance of two leagues from Calais you enter on the territory of Melle, Oye and Guines, which then

then belonged to the king of England. When they were near to Calais, sir Piers Courteney said; ‘ Lord of Clary, we are now on the territories of the king of England: you have handsomely acquitted yourself, in escorting me; and I give you many thanks for your company.’

The lord de Clary had not forgotten the speech of sir Piers to the countess St. Pol, in the presence of many persons; for it had made him fulky and full of anger, which although at the time he had not noticed as he thought it deserved, he was unwilling it should pass off unanswered; for he considered it as presumptuous and dishonourable to the chivalry of France. Sir Piers had publicly declared, that he had purposelly left England to seek deeds of arms in France, and had not found any one in that country willing to oppose him. The lord de Clary had therefore determined, in his own mind, that such expressions should not remain unnoticed. He therefore, on taking leave, said,—‘ Sir Piers, you are now on the lands of the king of England, whither I have escorted you, by orders of my king and my lord of Burgundy. You may recollect that, the day before yesterday, when we were in the apartment of the countess de St. Pol, who entertained us handsomely, you spoke with too great latitude, as it seemed to me, and too much to the blame and prejudice of the french chivalry; for you said, you had come to the court of the king of France, and had found none willing to oppose you in arms: and you seemed

seemed to have it understood, that there was not a knight in France who dared to tilt with you three courses with a lance. I wish you therefore to know, that I (who am one of the smalleſt knights of the realm) offer myself, to maintain that France is not ſo devoid of knights, but that you may find many willing to accept your challenge; and if you will accept of me to this intent, either this day or to-morrow, I will meet you without hatred or any ill-will. It is ſolely with a view to defend our honour, and that you may not return to Calais or England, and boast you have defeated the chivalry of France without ſtriking a blow: now, ſay whether you will accept my challenge or not.'

Sir Piers Courteney was ready with his answer, and faid,—‘ Lord de Clary, you ſpeak well: I accept your challenge, and propose that you be at this place to-morrow, armed as you please. I will be ſo likewife; and we will tilt three courses with the lance, by which you will recover the honour of France, and give me much ſatisfaction.’

‘ Agreed,’ replied the lord de Clary: ‘ I will be here at the hour you shall appoint.’ The two knights then pledged their faith to each other for this tournaſment, and ſeparated: the lord de Clary went to Marquife, which was not far diſtant, where he provided himſelf with armour, a ſhield and lance. He was not long in doing this; for the knights on the frontier of Boulogne and Calais take care to have ample ſupplies. He did it all, however, as ſecretly as he could; for he was unwilling

unwilling that too many should know and speak of it.

In like manner, sir Piers Courteney, on his arrival at Calais, was not unmindful of the engagement he had made. He had no occasion to seek either for armour or arms, for he had brought with him from England his own proper arms, which were good and strong.

At this time, sir John Warnes\* was governor of Calais, to whom he told the engagement he had made with the lord de Clary. Sir John replied, that he would accompany him, with some other knights of Calais. On the ensuing morning, the two knights met at the appointed place; but the English knight was better accompanied than the lord de Clary, for he had with him the governor of Calais. On their meeting, there was not much conversation, for each knew what he was to do.

Both of them were strongly and completely armed, to abide the event, such as the fortune of arms should decide; and they were well mounted. They had their targets fast buckled on, and their lances given them, which were of sharp, well tempered Bourdeaux steel. Having taken their distance, they spurred their horses full gallop, against each other, but missed their strokes, which seemed to vex them greatly. On the second course, they met full; and the lord de Clary gave sir Piers so

\* I cannot discover sir John Warnes, and must suppose it a mistake; for sir William Beauchamp was governor of Calais when the truce was signed.

Lord Berners calls him sir John Bernes.

severe a blow with his stiff and well-tempered lance, that it pierced the target, and, entering deeply into the shoulder, struck him off his horse. The lord de Clary, having so ably tilted, passed on, and finished his career as an accomplished knight should, and remained quiet, but seeing the English knight was unhorsed, surrounded by his friends as he lay on the ground, and thinking that he might have wounded him, for his lance with the blow was shivered in pieces, rode towards him. The English advanced to meet him, saying he was not a courteous tilter. ‘Why so?’ replied the lord de Clary. ‘Because you have thrust your lance into sir Piers’ shouler: you ought and could have tilted more liberally.’ ‘It was not my part to be over courteous; for I was ready prepared to meet with such an accident, or perhaps a worse, if it had so happened; but since he had such pleasure in justing, ask him, or I will for you, if he be satisfied, or wish for more.’

Sir John Bernes, upon this, said, ‘No, sir knight: you may depart, for you have done enough.’ The lord de Clary went away with his company, and the English carried sir Piers Courteney to Calais, that his wound might be attended to and cured. The lord de Clary returned to France, expecting to receive great praise for the goodly act he thought he had done; but I will tell you how it turned out.

When it was made known to the king of France, the duke of Burgundy, and their council, that the lord de Clary, in accompanying sir Piers Courteney, had fought with, and so dangerously wounded him, that

that he was in danger of his life, they were highly enraged against him, and in particular sir Guy de la Trimouille. They declared his conduct deserved at least confiscation of his lands, and perpetual banishment from the kingdom of France. Others, who were his enemies, said he had acted like an infamous traitor, in challenging and fighting a knight that had been placed under his guard, by the king and the duke of Burgundy; that he was guilty of an unpardonable crime, and ought to suffer death.

The lord de Clary was summoned to appear, which summons he obeyed, and when brought before the king, the duke of Burgundy and the council, was sharply reprimanded, for having dared to injure a knight who had come from foreign countries to the court of France to perform a deed of arms and gain renown, and had left that court with perfect satisfaction to all, and under his safeguard: notwithstanding which, he had on his return, at the boundary of the two kingdoms, challenged him to mortal combat, without having demanded permission of his sovereign, on whose territories he was: that this was a crime deserving the severest punishment, by which others might take example.

The lord de Clary, on hearing this bitter reproof, was thunderstruck, for he thought what he had done deserved a contrary treatment. Having paused awhile, he said,—‘ My lords, it is indeed true that you intrusted to my care sir Piers Courtenay, with orders to escort him as far as Calais,

or to the borders of the kingdom. Of this I have acquitted myself loyally and faithfully, which if necessary to prove, I can readily do so from himself. It is also true, that on our road we visited the countess de St. Pol at Luzieuz, who received us very kindly. While there, the following conversation passed: The lady asked sir Piers, if he were contented with the lords of France, and what he thought of the country? The knight courteously replied, 'Madam, the state of France is rich, extensive and plentiful. With respect to its lords, I am perfectly satisfied with the reception and entertainments I have had from them, excepting one thing. I have put myself to very great expense in my preparations and journey to Paris, to perform a deed of arms, but, when arrived there, found none willing to accept of my challenge.' My lords, when I heard this speech before such a lady as the countess of St. Pol, sister to the king of England, my blood boiled within me; but, with much difficulty I kept silence, because you had entrusted him to my care and protection; and I never gave him the least cause to suspect I was any way hurt by what he had said, so long as we continued together in France. But true it is, that when we were about to separate on the borders of the country of Gones, I reminded him of his expressions to the countess de St. Pol, which, I said, were neither honest nor honourable, as he seemed to wish it to appear, that the chivalry of France was unable to meet with any

any one who dared to fight with him: that I, as a knight of France, if such were his meaning, offered to prove the contrary, being unwilling that, on his return to England, he should have the power of renewing his boastings: that I was ready and desirous to afford him the pleasure of tilting three courses with a lance, either that or any future day. Certainly, my lords, I made this offer for the honour of the kingdom of France and its chivalry, who are here present; and it seemed to me, that he accepted my challenge with much joy, and fixed the meeting for the morrow, on the spot where we were speaking. He then went to Calais, and I returned to Marquise, where I provided myself with the necessary arms, as he was to do at Calais. On the morrow, according to our appointment, we met. He came well attended by some of the garrison of Calais, and some of the knights and squires of the borders came with me, such as the lord de Montkarel and sir John de Longyilliers. When we met, we had but a short conversation, and then tilted with spears of war, for we were both completely armed, to the best of our abilities. The fortune of the combat fell to me, for at the second course I drove my lance into him, and threw him on the ground. I then went to see what situation he was in, and if he wished to continue the combat. The governor of Calais told me that what had been done was sufficient, and that I might depart. This I did. You have ordered me hither, and here I am. I thought I had acted properly in support of the honour

honour of the kingdom and its chivalry, and have related to you the exact truth. If I am to be punished for what I have done, I shall submit myself to the judgment of my lord the constable, and the marshals of France, and also to the evidence of sir Piers Courteney himself, with whose consent I have fought this duel, and to the discretion of all knights and squires of honour in France or England, who may wish to attend to it.'

The lord de Clary, having thus clearly exculpated himself, greatly softened the anger of those who had sent for him: but this did not prevent him from being committed to prison, where he remained a considerable time in much danger. His lands were seized, and himself on the point of banishment from France, when the lord de Coucy and the duke of Bourbon, who loved him, interfered, and with great difficulty made his peace, by means of the countess de St. Pol, who testified to the truth of what he had said, of the conversation that passed at her house.

On obtaining his liberty, he was addressed,—  
 ' Lord de Clary, when you challenged sir Piers Courteney to fight, instead of acting, as you thought, very gallantly, you behaved infamously; for he was under the protection of the king, and you had orders to conduct him in safety to Calais. You committed a great outrage, when you noticed, in the manner you have yourself declared, the conversation he held in joke at the countess de St. Pol's. Before you had proposed this combat, you ought to have returned hither to my lords,

lords, and have told them, that sir Piers Courteney had held such and such insolent language against the honour of the knights of France in your presence. They would then have ordered you how to act. Because, therefore, you have not done this, you have been thus punished. Be another time more discreet; and return thanks for your deliverance to my lord of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy: they have exerted themselves much to serve you, as has the countess de St. Pol; for that good lady took great pains that you should be acquitted.' The lord de Clary replied,— 'Many thanks, my lords;' adding, 'I certainly thought I was deserving more praise than blame, when I acted as I did.'

During the stay of the king of France at Montpellier, he gave a grand banquet to many ladies and damsels of that town; during which, all I have just related was talked over, and the cause was, that the three knights, who were desirous of holding the lists against all comers, wished to avoid falling under like blame to the lord de Clary.

Sir Boucicaut the younger, sir Reginald de Roye and the lord de Saimpi, offered to hold a field of arms on the frontier of Calais, in the course of the ensuing summer, against all foreign knights and squires, for the space of thirty days, and to tilt with blunt lances or others. The king of France, as well as those present, thinking this proposal was rather presumptuous, remonstrated with them, and desired they would put down their

challenge on paper, that if any improper language were made use of, it might be corrected ; for the king and his ministers wished to examine it, being unwilling that any improper or unusual terms should be used.

The three knights agreed that this would be right, and, in reply to the king, said they would instantly obey his commands. They ordered a clerk, with pens, paper and ink, into another apartment, and dictated to him as follows:

‘ From the great desire we have to become acquainted with the nobles, gentlemen, knights and squires bordering on the kingdom of France, as well as with those in the more distant countries, we propose being at St. Ingelvere \* the twentieth day of May next ensuing, and to remain there for thirty days complete ; and on each of these thirty days, excepting the Fridays, we will deliver from their vows all knights, squires and gentlemen, from whatever countries they may come, with five courses with a sharp or blunt lance, according to their pleasure, or with both lances if more agreeable. On the outside of our tents will be hung our shields, blazoned with our arms ; that is to say, with our targets of war and our shields of peace. Whoever may choose to tilt with us has only to come, or send any one, the preceding day, to touch with a rod either of these shields, according to his courage. If he touch the target, he shall find an opponent ready on the

---

\* St. Ingelvere,—a village in Picardy, near Calais.

morrow to engage him in a mortal combat with three courses with a lance: if the shield, he shall be tilted with a blunted lance; and if both shields are touched, he shall be accommodated with both sorts of combat.

‘ Every one who may come, or send to touch our shields, must give in his name to the persons who shall be appointed to the care of them. And all such foreign knights and squires as shall be desirous of tilting with us, shall bring with them some noble friend, and we will do the same on our parts, who will order what may be proper to be done on either side. We particularly entreat, such noble knights or squires as may accept our challenge, to believe that we do not make it through presumption, pride, or any ill will, but solely with a view of having their honourable company, and making acquaintance with them, which we desire from the bottom of our hearts. None of our targets shall be covered with steel or iron, any more than those who may tilt with us; nor shall there be any fraud, deceit or trick made use of, but what shall be deemed honourable by the judges of the tournament. And that all gentlemen, knights and squires, to whom these presents shall come, may depend on their authenticity, we have set to them our seals, with our arms, this twentieth day of November, at Montpellier, in the year of grace 1389.’ Underneath was signed, Reginald de Roye, Boucicaut, Saimpi.

The king of France was well pleased with this courageous challenge of his three knights, and de-

clared it should have his consent, if, on examination by his ministers, there was no fault found with the terms it was couched in. It was objected to by some, that it was wrong to fix the place for this tournament so near to Calais, as the English might think it was arrogantly and particularly aimed at them; and that all occasions of quarrel should be avoided, for a truce had been agreed to for three years between France and England. The king's ministers were one whole day considering the matter, without coming to any conclusion. Some of the most prudent said, it ought not to be allowed, nor the whims of wild young knights to be acceded to, for more evil than good might ensue from them.

The king, however, who was young himself, greatly inclined towards them, and said,—‘ Let them perform their enterprise: they are young and courageous, and, besides, have vowed to do so before the ladies of Montpellier. We are desirous they should undertake it, and bring it to the happiest end they can.’

When the king had thus declared his mind to the council, no one made further opposition, to the great joy of the knights. The challenge having been agreed to in the manner the knights had drawn it out, the king called them into his closet, and said,—‘ Boucicaut, Reginald, and Saimpi, be attentive in this your enterprise, to guard well your own honour and that of our kingdom: let nothing be spared in the state you keep; for I will not fail to assist you as far as

ten

ten thousand francs.' The three knights cast themselves on their knees, and returned the king their warmest thanks.

---

## CHAP. VI.

DURING THE KING OF FRANCE'S RESIDENCE AT BEZIERS, ACCUSATIONS ARE MADE AGAINST BETHISAC, TREASURER TO THE DUKE OF BERRY.—THINKING TO BE SENT TO THE POPE AND ESCAPE PUNISHMENT, HE CONFESSES HIMSELF A HERETIC AND SODOMITE, BUT IS TRANSFERRED OVER, BY THE OFFICIAL AT BEZIERS, TO THE SECULAR POWER, AND BURNT.

WHEN the king of France had, for fifteen days or more, taken his amusements with the ladies and damsels of Montpellier, and his ministers, during that time, had attended to the state of the town, for that had been the cause of his coming, and had made many reforms and taken off several heavy taxes of which the inhabitants had complained, he graciously took his leave of the ladies, and one morning very early departed, following the road to Alipiam \*, where he dined, and lay that night at St. Thibery †.

---

\* Alipiam. It is Olipiam in the MSS. and Alpiam in Verard. Q. if not intended for Ville Airac, which is on the line from Montpellier to St. Thibery.

† St. Thibery, a town in the diocese of Adge, near Pezenas.

On the morrow, after his morning-draught, he set off and came to Beziers, where he was received most joyfully; for the good people of that town, and the adjoining ones of Pezenas, Cabestan and Narbonne\*, were anxious to see him, in order to make their complaints against an officer of the duke of Berry, called Bethisac, who had impoverished the country all around, by seizing whatever he could lay his hands on. This Bethisac had attended the king's company ever since he had left Avignon; but the king's ministers, who sought his ruin, never told him, 'Bethisac, look to yourself, for very strict inquiries will be made into your management: there have already been made very heavy accusations against you to the king.' But, on the contrary, they made him good cheer, joked and laughed with him, and promised him increased honours, in which he was disappointed, as I shall shortly relate.

The king of France left St. Thibery at one o'clock in the afternoon, and between three and four entered the town of Beziers. He was met by the bishop and all the clergy in their robes, and the citizens, ladies and damsels in procession: they formed a lane, through which he rode a foot's pace; and, as he passed, they all fell on their knees. In this manner was he conducted to the cathedral, and dismounted at the portico, where had been erected a rich altar, adorned with holy

---

\* Pezenas, Cabestan and Narbonne, towns in Lower Languedoc.

relics from the church. The king, having on his knees very devoutly made his prayers at this altar, was conducted into the church by the bishop of Beziers and the duke of Bourbon, followed by all the great lords. He remained in the church about half an hour, and then went to the palace that was adjoining, where he, his brother the duke of Touraine, and his uncle the duke of Bourbon were lodged. The other lords were lodged in the town, which was of a sufficient size, for Beziers is a large city.

The king was for three days revelling with the ladies and damsels in Beziers, before any notice was taken of Béthisac; but the inquisitors who had been appointed to make inquiries concerning him were not idle, but did their office secretly, and discovered many atrocious acts deserving the severest punishment. On the fourth day, Béthisac was summoned before the council, and shut up in a chamber for his examination. He was ordered to make answer to the following accusations, and was shewn at the same time a number of complaints and petitions that had been presented to the king at Beziers, accusing him of weak management and such great extortions as made the whole country cry out against him. All these were read in his presence. To some he gave satisfactory answers, to others not, saying he had no knowledge of them, and referring them to the séneschals of Beaucaire and Carcassonne, and to the chancellor of Berry. They concluded this examination by telling him, it was necessary to commit him to prison

until he should clear himself from these heavy charges. This he obeyed, for he could not help it; and, as soon as he was gone, the inquisitors went to his house, and seized all his papers and accounts of whatever things he had been concerned in, carrying them away to search into them more at leisure. They discovered a variety of transactions, and accounts of large sums that he had extorted from these countries.

He was asked, if these accounts were just, and what had become of the large sums he had received; he answered, 'that the accounts were just; that the whole amount had been paid to his lord of Berry, and had passed through his hands, or those of other treasurers, for which he had received legal acquittances, that were in such a place of his house.' Persons were sent thither, who laid them before the council: and they were found, on comparing them, to tally tolerably well with the accounts of receipt.

The inquisitors and the council were satisfied, and Bethisac was no longer closely confined. The council conferred together, and said,—'Bethisac is clear from this accusation; for it is apparent, that all the sums the people complain of having been exacted from them have been paid to the duke of Berry. How can we help it if these sums have been extravagantly spent?'

Bethisac's defence was nothing but the truth; for this duke of Berry was the most covetous man alive, and if he could only get money, cared not by what means; and when he had it, he miserably expended

expended it, like many of the present and past times.

The king's ministers found nothing in the conduct of Bethisac that was deserving death. All, however, were not of this opinion; for some of them said,—‘ Bethisac has made such cruel levies, and so impoverished the people, to gratify the passions of my lord of Berry, that the blood of these poor creatures cries out loudly against him; for that he being the only one from those parts of the duke's council, and knowing the poverty of the country, should have remonstrated with the duke, and if he refused to listen to him, he should have come and informed the king and council of the situation of the country, and of the duke's intentions: proper measures would then have been taken, and himself exculpated for the large sums he was now accused of having amassed.’

In consequence, Bethisac was remanded before the council, and again more closely examined, touching the expenditure of the great sums that had been raised and paid to the duke of Berry; for they had found the amount to be three millions of francs. He replied,—‘ My lords, I cannot make out any clearer account of this: the duke has laid out large sums in the reparations of his castles and houses, in the purchase of lands in the county d'Estampes, from the count de Boulogne, and in jewels; and you know he is very careless in such purchases. His establishments, which were very great before, have been much increased; and he has made such presents to Thibaut and Morinot,

Morinot, and the valets about his person, that they are become very rich.'

'And you Bethisac,' asked the council, 'have you been well paid for the pains and services you have done him? one hundred thousand francs is a pretty tolerable recompense.' 'My lords,' said Bethisac, 'I am very well satisfied with what my lord of Berry has given me; for he wishes all his people to be rich.' 'Ha, Bethisac,' replied the council, 'you now talk like a fool: riches, ill acquired, are neither honourable nor profitable. You must return to prison, and we will consider what you have now told us, and wait there the king's pleasure, to whom we will report every thing you have said in your defence.' 'My lords,' replied Bethisac, 'God assist me!'

He remained in prison four days without being noticed by the council. When it was known in the country that Bethisac had been arrested and thrown into prison, and that an inquisition was holding on his conduct; and that whoever had any complaints to make should come forward; numbers hastened to Beziers, and presented petitions and accusations of heavy charges against Bethisac at the king's palace.

Some complained that he had robbed them of their lands without cause; others of the violences he had committed on their wives and daughters. In short, the complaints were so numerous, that the king's council were tired of hearing them: they plainly shewed how much he was hated by the people, which arose from the great exertions he

he had made to fill the purse of the duke of Berry.

The council were embarrassed to know how to act; for the duke of Berry had sent to Beziers two knights, the lord de Nantouillet and sir Peter Mespin, with credential letters to the king. These knights avowed, in the name of the duke, all the acts Bethisac had committed, as done by his command, and claimed, at the same time, the person of Bethisac, that they might conduct him to his lord, the duke of Berry.

The king, from the many infamous stories he had heard of Bethisac, hated him, and he and his brother were inclined to have him put to death; but the council dared not condemn him, as they too much feared the duke of Berry. They said to the king,—‘In case my lord of Berry takes on himself all the acts of Bethisac, whatever they may deserve, we do not see that, with any plea of justice, we can put him to death. For at the time when he raised all these vast sums, by harassing the people with taxes, levies and subsidies, the duke of Berry acted as if he were king, with the same royal power you have at this moment. We can, however, do one thing, as a punishment for his crimes: we may take possession of all his goods, moveable and immoveable, and reduce him to the state in which the duke of Berry found him, and distribute these among such as have suffered the most from his wickedness.’

Why should I make a longer story of it? Bethisac was on the point of escaping, with the loss indeed

indeed of his fortune, when other events happened that I will relate. I know not, nor have ever been able to learn but from his own confession, whether he was or was not guilty of the crimes he accused himself of. He declared he had been for a long time a heretic, and had done many horrid and wicked deeds. According to the information I had, some persons visited him by night in his prison, and, to frighten him, said; 'Bethisac, you are in an unfortunate situation; for the king of France, his brother and the duke of Bourbon are determined on your death: and they have had so many accusations against your conduct, when you formerly governed Languedoc, that they judge you deserving the gallows, and you will not escape with the confiscation of your wealth. This has been offered to the king; but he hates you mortally, and refused it, saying, that both your property and your body too was forfeited to him, and you should not long remain confined. We tell you this, that you may consider and make the best use of your time; for to-morrow you will be brought from prison, and, from the appearances we have observed, we suppose you will be condemned to death.'

This speech greatly terrified Bethisac, who exclaimed, 'Ah, holy Mary! are there no means to avoid this?' 'Yes,' replied they: 'say to-morrow that you wish to speak to the council: they will either come or send for you. When in their presence, say, 'My lords, I fear I have greatly offended God, and for this offence am I now

now suffering under these slanderous reports.' They will ask what you mean. Reply, that you have for a long time erred from the faith, and that you are a heretic. Keep steady to this declaration. The bishop of Beziers, when he hears this, will claim you to be given up to him. This will be instantly complied with, for such cases devolve to the ecclesiastical jurisdiction. You will be sent to Avignon, where no one will venture to accuse you in opposition to the duke of Berry, whom the pope dare not anger. By this means you will escape, without loss of life or fortune; but, if you hesitate in taking advantage of the earliest opportunity, to-morrow you will be hanged; for the king hates you from the clamour of the people, with whom you know how unpopular you are.'

Bethisac unfortunately believed all this false information that had been given to him, for those who are in peril of their lives are much confused in mind: he said, — ' You are my good friends who thus kindly advise me, and may God reward you for it! The time may perhaps come when I shall be enabled to thank you otherwise than by words.' Upon this, his visitors departed.

When morning came, Bethisac called the gaoler, and said, ' My friend, I beg of you to go, or send, to such and such persons,' whom he named, in the number of his inquisitors. He replied, he would do so; and they were informed, that Bethisac wanted to speak with them in his prison. They hastened thither, in the hope that they were already

ready acquainted with the purport of his sending for them. When arrived, they asked what he wanted: he answered,—‘ My fair sirs, I have had time to examine the state of my conscience; and I fear I have greatly offended God, by having for a long time erred in my faith; for I do not believe one word of the Trinity; nor that the Son of God has ever deigned to debase himself by descending from Heaven, and putting on the human form by being born of woman. I believe likewise, that when we die, our soul dies with us.’ ‘ By holy Mary, Bethisac,’ replied the informers, ‘ you do indeed err greatly against the church: consider well what you have said, for your speech deserves the flames.’ ‘ I know not,’ answered Bethisac, ‘ whether my speech deserves fire or water, but such have been my opinions ever since I came to understanding, and such will they continue as long as I live.’

The inquisitors were so rejoiced at what he had said, that they would not for the present listen to more, but, on their departure, strictly charged the gaoler not to admit to him man or woman lest he should retract his opinions, and hastened to lay before the council what they had heard. They went to the king, in his chamber, and reported what Bethisac had declared. He was greatly astonished, and said; ‘ We order him to be put to death: he is a wicked wretch, an heretic and thief. We will, that he be burnt and hanged, that he may have the reward he deserves; nor for any thing

thing my uncle of Berry shall say, will I pardon him.'

News was soon spread through Beziers and other places, that Bethisac had of his own free will, without the least constraint, confessed himself an heretic and sodomite, which practice he had long followed, and that the king had condemned him to be burnt and hanged. The inhabitants of Beziers were pleased at this, for he was much hated by them. The two knights from the duke of Berry were thunderstruck, and knew not how to act: at length sir Peter Mespis, addressing himself to the lord de Nantouillet, said,—I suspect that Bethisac has been betrayed, and that some one, who has been to see him in prison, has frightened him, and advised him to accuse himself; and that, if he persist in owning himself guilty of these horrible and infamous crimes, the church will claim him to be tried according to its canons, and he will be delivered up to the pope at Avignon. Ah, the blockhead will be deceived! for I have already heard the king has declared he shall be burnt and hanged. Come, let us hasten to his prison, and remonstrate with him on his folly, and make him retract all he has said, for he has been betrayed by false friends.'

The two knights immediately went from their lodgings to the prison, and demanded from the gaoler to speak with Bethisac. The gaoler excused himself, saying,—‘ My lords, I am particularly ordered, as well as these four serjeants at arms, who have been sent hither by the king, not

to suffer any one to converse with the prisoner, under pain of our lives ; and this command of the king 'we dare not disobey.' The knights perceived all further attempt would be vain, for it was over with Bethisac, and that he must die for the crimes of which he had been wickedly induced to accuse himself. They then returned to their inn, paid their expenses, mounted their horses, and set out on their return to the duke of Berry.

The end of Bethisac was, that about ten o'clock in the morning of the next day he was carried from prison to the palace of the bishop, where were assembled his judges and the official of the bishop's court. The baillif of Beziers, under whose care he had been committed prisoner, said to the officers of the bishop, 'Here is Bethisac, whom we deliver to you as a sodomite, an heretic, and one erring greatly against the faith, who, had he not been a clerk, should have been punished by us according to his deserts.'

The official demanded if he were such a person as he had been represented, and that he would, in the hearing of the people, avow or deny it. Bethisac, who expected to escape, by confessing himself guilty, replied, that the charges were true. He was thrice asked this question, and thrice acknowledged it aloud. You may suppose how grossly he must have been deceived : had he kept firm to the defence he had made to the accusations brought against him, he would have been acquitted ; for the duke of Berry had taken upon himself all the charges of extortion, in raising the taxes

taxes in Languedoc. Fortune, one may conclude, played him this trick; and when he was seated, as he thought, on the top of her wheel, she suddenly turned it round and whirled him in the dirt, as she has done to thousands since the world began.

Bethisac was, by the official, given over to the bailiff of Beziers, who, in temporal matters, governs for the king: without delay, he led him to the square before the palace, and made such haste, that Bethisac had no time to make any defence, nor retract what he had said; for when he saw the fire, and that he was put into the hands of the executioner, he was affrighted, and perceived that he had been betrayed. He called aloud to be heard, but no attention whatever was paid to him: he was told,—‘ Bethisac, the order is given, and you must die: your evil deeds have brought you to a disgraceful end.’ Much haste was made, for the fire was lighted; and they had erected a gallows and a post, with a large collar and chain: they opened the collar by a hinge, and closed it again, when round his neck, and dragged him to the post, fastening him thereto with the chain. He cried aloud, saying,—‘ Duke of Berry, they wrongfully and treacherously are putting me to death.’ The moment he was fastened to the stake, they covered him with dry faggots, to which they set fire; and thus was Bethisac burnt, and his bones hanged: the square being in front of the palace, the king of France, if he pleased, might have witnessed it from the windows of his apartments. Such was the miserable end of Bethisac;

and the people revenged on him the many great vexations and violences he had committed during the time he governed Languedoc \*.

---

## CHAP. VII.

WHEN THE KING OF FRANCE IS AT TOULOUSE,  
HE SUMMONS THE COUNT DE FOIX, WHO,  
ON HIS ARRIVAL, PAYS HIM HOMAGE FOR HIS  
COUNTY OF FOIX.

THE king of France did not remain long in Beziers after this severe act of justice, but set out with his array, taking the road towards Carcassone. Since he had left Avignon, he had been always attended by his marshal, sir Lewis de Sancerre. The king did not follow the straight road, but visited different towns, such as Cabestan †, Narbonne ‡, Lymoux §, Mont-royal || and Fou-

---

\* Don Vaissette, in his history of Languedoc, gives very satisfactory reasons, to shew that Froissart was mistaken as to the time of Bethisac's execution, which took place the 22d December, 1389, at Toulouse, some months after the king had left Beziers. For further particulars, I refer to that history.

† Cabestan,—a town in lower Languedoc, diocese of Nimes.

‡ Narbonne,—a large city in lower Languedoc.

§ Lymoux,—a city in upper Languedoc, five leagues from Carcassone.

|| Mont-royal. Q.

gaux,

gaux \*, thence he returned to Carcassone, where he resided four days. On his departure, he passed through Ville-franche †, Avignonet ‡, and Montgiscard §, in his way to Toulouse. The inhabitants of this city, being anxious to see him, went out in grand procession, handsomely dressed, and escorted him with much pomp to the castle of Toulouse. The citizens of the town, which is rich and important, made the king such presents, on his arrival, as well pleased him.

When the king had refreshed himself, for three days, in Toulouse, he was advised to summon the count de Foix, who had left Béarn, and fixed his residence at a town in Foix, called Mazeres, fourteen leagues from Toulouse; for he had received information of the king's arrival at Toulouse, and of his intention to summon him.

The marshal of France and the lord de la Riviere, were ordered to wait on the count, who, setting out on a Wednesday after dinner, arrived at a tolerably good town in the Toulousain, called Isle Jourdain ||, and on the Morrow, by dinner-time, came to Mazeres. The count de Foix, on

\* Fougaux. Q. Fougans, a village in upper Languedoc.

† Ville-franche,—a town in upper Languedoc, diocese of Alby.

‡ Avignonet,—a town in upper Languedoc, diocese of St. Papoul.

§ Montgiscard,—a town in upper Languedoc, three leagues from Toulouse.

|| Isle Jourdain,—a town in Armagnac, six leagues from Toulouse.

learning their arrival, received them kindly, from his affection to the king, and from his former acquaintance with them.

The marshal, addressing him, said,—‘ My lord of Foix, our very dear lord, the king of France, sends us to invite you to come to Toulouse; otherwise, so great is his desire to see you, that he will do his utmost to visit you in your own country.’ The count replied,—‘ Sir Lewis, I will not give the king the trouble of coming to me; for it is more becoming that I wait on him. You will tell him, therefore, if you please, from me, that I will be in Toulouse within four days.’ ‘ It is well said,’ replied the knight: ‘ we will return, and carry him this your answer.’ ‘ That you may boldly do,’ said the count; ‘ but not to-day; for you shall now stay with me, as I am heartily glad to see you both; and in the morning you shall set out on your return.’

The two knights remained with the count, who was in the highest good humour, that day and night, and they conversed on various subjects. The count was a wise and prudent man, and had a talent of drawing from any person with whom he conversed, be his station what it might, his most private thoughts. At bed-time, they took leave of the count, intending to set out very early in the morning for Toulouse, which they did, and I believe performed the journey in one day. On their return, they found the king playing at chess with the duke of Bourbon, who, on seeing them, called out, ‘ Well, what news? Will the count

count de Foix come or not?" "Yes, sir," replied la Riviere: "he has a very earnest desire to come to you, and will be here within four days." "Well," said the king, "we shall be very happy to see him."

The two knights then left the king to continue his game, and went to sup and refresh themselves, for they had rode a long day's journey. The count de Foix, who resided at Mazeres, was not forgetful of the journey he was to make, and his preparations were soon ready, for he had given orders on that head when he had first heard of the king's coming to Toulouse. He sent forward to Toulouse purveyances in abundance, suitable to his rank, and had ordered two hundred knights and squires from Béarn to attend him. On the day the count had fixed for his arrival at Toulouse, he entered the city with upwards of six hundred horse, and well accompanied by knights and squires of his vassalage. Among them were, sir Roger d'Espaign his cousin, the lord de Corasse, the lord de Valentin, the lord de Quer, the lord de Baruge, sir Espaign du Lyon, the lord de Roquepaire, the lord de Lane, the lord de Befach, the lord de Perle, sir Peter de Cabestain, sir Menaut de Noailles, sir Richard de la Mothe, sir Arnold de Saint Basile, with many others. He was also attended by his two brothers, sir Peter and sir Arnold de Béarn, and his two bastard-sons, whom he affectionately loved, sir Evan and sir Gracien de Foix.

The count had intentions of settling on these

two sons the greater part of Béarn, which, being free land and dependant on no one but God, he could dispose of as he pleased.

The count de Foix dismounted at the convent of the Friar Preachers, where he and his household were lodged; and his people quartered themselves as near him as they could.

The citizens of Toulouse shewed much joy at the arrival of the count de Foix, for they loved him from his being so kind a neighbour, and never suffering any of his people to make war or commit any violence on their country. They presented him with the finest wines and so many other things, that he was well contented with them. He made his entry into Toulouse rather late in the evening, and remained all that night in his lodgings. On the morrow, about ten o'clock, he mounted his horse, as did those who were to attend him to the king, consisting of more than two hundred knights, all men of distinction; and in this state he paraded through the streets of Toulouse to the castle, where the king resided. He dismounted in the court within the first square of the castle, where servants took and held their horses.

The count and his company ascended the steps of the great hall, whither the king had gone from his chamber to wait his arrival; for he was very anxious to see him for the gallant actions he had performed, and on account of his fair reputation. The count de Foix, who was very handsome in person and in countenance, entered the hall bare-headed (for he never wore a cap), with his hair

scattered about: when he perceived the king, his brother, uncle, and the lords of France, in the act of doing the king honour, and not till then, he bended very low on one knee: he afterwards rose up, advanced, and knelt a second time close to the king, who raised him up with his hand, and embraced him, saying, 'Fair cousin of Foix, you are welcome, for your visit has greatly rejoiced us.' 'My lord,' replied the count, 'I thank you much for what you are pleased to say.' They had a long conversation together, until dinner-time arrived, but I neither heard the words nor the subject.

Water being brought, they washed, and seated themselves at table. The archbishop of Toulouse was seated at the head of the king's table, next to him the king, then his uncle the duke of Bourbon, then the count de Foix, the counts de la Marche and de Vendôme, and none others. At the second were seated, the lord Charles d'Albret, the count de Harcourt, the lord Philip de Bar, and four other knights attached to the count de Foix. At another table were placed, the marshal de Sancerre, sir Roger d'Espaign, and eight of the count's knights. This dinner was magnificent and splendid in all respects. When they had dined, the tables were removed; and, grace being said, they amused themselves in various ways. The king and the lords were on their feet nearly two hours, in the presence chamber, listening to the minstrels, for the count de Foix took delight in them.

After this, wine and spices were brought, and the comfit box was presented solely to the king by

the count de Harcourt. Sir Gerard de la Pierre did the same to the duke of Bourbon, and sir Menaut de Noailles to the count de Foix \*.

When this was done, it was about four o'clock in the afternoon: the count de Foix took leave of the king, the duke of Bourbon and the other lords, and, leaving the hall, went into the court, where he found his horses and attendants waiting for him. The count and his company having mounted, returned to his lodgings, much pleased with the reception and entertainment the king of France had given him, and praised him exceedingly when conversing with his knights. During the time the king of France and count Gaston de Foix were at Toulouse, many tokens of affection passed between them, which was encouraged to the utmost of their power by the marshal de Sancerre and the lord de la Riviere, because they saw the king, as well as the duke of Bourbon, had conceived a friendship for the count de Foix,

---

\* 'There was another custom at the tables of the king and great barons, which was not usual at the entertainments of private persons. Beside the spices which composed the dessert, and were intended for the guests in common, there were other more rare spices, that were served in a box divided into compartments, which was of gold, silver, or silver gilt, and called a "drageoir" (comfit box.) It was commonly a squire or some person of distinction who had the honour to present it to his lord alone, unless he wished to have particular respect paid to any of his guests, to whom he sent it.' Froissart is then quoted as in the text, by M. le Grand d'Aussy, to whom I refer for further particulars respecting this and other ancient customs, in his "Vie privée des François."

The count de Foix one day entertained at dinner the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon, the count de la Marche, and the other French lords. The dinner was beyond measure grand and plentiful, with numerous dishes and devices. Upwards of two hundred knights were seated at table, served by those of the count de Foix; and, just as the tables were on the point of removal, the king of France, who had dined at the castle, made his appearance, attended by the lord Charles d'Albret and the lord Philip de Bar, his cousin-germans. He could not resist the pleasure of seeing this company, and had come to the lodgings of the count attended by only eleven others.

The count de Foix and the whole company were highly pleased at this condescension of the king in coming to visit him. Various were the diversions on this occasion; and the Gascons and French tried their skill and strength in wrestling, throwing the bar or javelin for the farthest or highest; and it was night before the king and the company separated. The count presented that day to the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon, and to the knights and squires attached to the king, more than sixty coursers, palfreys and ambling mules, all saddled and caparisoned becoming their different ranks. He gave also to the minstrels of the king, the duke of Touraine and the duke of Bourbon, two hundred golden crowns, and to the heralds the like sum. All, therefore, were loud in the praise of his generosity.

On the fourth day after this entertainment, the  
count

count de Foix, well attended by the barons and knights of Béarn and Foix, waited on the king, at the castle, to perform what had been required of him ; that is to say, his homage for the county of Foix and its dependancies, reserving to himself, as free land, Béarn. There had been, before this, many treaties negotiated between the king and count de Foix, through the king's ministers, the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier and the bishop of Noyon, who had lately arrived from Avignon ; but these treaties were kept very secret. It was said, that the count de Foix required of the king that his son Evan de Foix should, after his decease, inherit that country, in consideration of which the king should receive, on the day of the count's death, one hundred thousand francs ; that his other son, sir Gracien, should hold the lands of Aire in Béarn, with the good towns of Aire and Mont-marsen ; and that all the lands the count then held in Béarn, should revert to his heir, the viscount de Châteaubon. This distribution had caused a difference between the count, his barons and knights ; several of whom said, that this could not be legally done without the public consent of the vassals of Béarn and Foix. As an intermediate step, homage was made of the county of Foix to the king of France, who, by the advice of his council, said to the count and barons of Foix,—‘ I now hold in my hand the homage for my county of Foix ; and if the succession should happen to be vacated, by the death of our cousin, the count de Foix, in our lifetime,

we will come to such resolutions concerning it, through the advice of our council, that Evan de Foix, and all the vassals of that county, shall be perfectly satisfied therewith\*.

This speech was sufficient for the count and his barons then present. When the regulations had been properly written out and sealed, the count de Foix took leave of the king, his brother, uncle, and the French lords; but that day he dined with the king, and in the evening returned to his lodgings. On the morrow, after drinking a cup, he departed from Toulouse, leaving his purveyors behind to pay his expences, and, having crossed the Garonne, at the bridge of Toulouse, returned to his own country, by way of Mont-marsen, and arrived at Orthès, where he dismissed all who had accompanied him, retaining only those necessary for his service. It was told me, and I believe it, that this visit of the king of France to Languedoc and Toulouse, cost the count de Foix more than forty thousand francs: great, however, as this sum was, the count was so courteous and liberal, that he very cheerfully paid it.

---

\* These precautions were vain. Matthieu de Foix, descendant of Roger Bernard, viscount de Castel-bon, lord of Moncade, and youngest son of Gaston I. count de Foix, having his pretensions supported by the nobility, seized the government, and had his right acknowledged by the court of France, through some arrangements he made with it.—*Villaret*, tome vi.

## CHAP. VIII.

THE KING OF FRANCE AND HIS BROTHER, THE DUKE OF TOURNAINE, WAGER WHICH SHALL ARRIVE THE SOONEST AT PARIS, FROM MONTPELLIER, EACH ATTENDED BY ONLY ONE KNIGHT.

I BELIEVE that the king of France, during his residence at Toulouse, attended much to the state of that part of his realm. He removed séneschals and other officers, and made such reforms that he was popular with all ranks of people. One day, in the presence of his brother, his uncle, the duke of Bourbon, and numbers of lords of France and Gascony, that it might be had in perpetual remembrance, he gave permission to his cousin-german, the lord Charles d'Albret, to quarter the fleurs de lis of France, alternately with his own; for the arms of Albret were simply gules without any distinction, but at present they are quartered with those of France.

The lord d'Albret considered this as a most distinguished gift; and the day the king had thus enriched the arms of Albret, the lord Charles gave a dinner that cost him one thousand francs; and presented the heralds and minstrels who had attended it with two hundred francs, which circumstance caused them to proclaim his liberality.

Shortly afterward, it was announced that the king

king would leave Toulouse, on his return to Paris, and his attendants made preparations accordingly. As soon as it was known, the archbishop and sénéchal of Toulouse, with the citizens and ladies, came to take their leave of the king, who received them all very kindly. He set out from Toulouse after breakfast, and lay the first night at Château-neuf d'Aulroy, and then continued his journey to Montpellier, where he was joyfully received. He there remained for three days to amuse himself; for the town and the ladies afforded him much pleasure. He was, however, very impatient to return to Paris, to see his queen. One day, while at Montpellier, he said, jokingly, to the duke of Touraine,—‘ Fair brother, I wish we were at Paris, and our attendants where they now are; for I have as great a desire to see the queen, as I suppose you must have to see my sister-in-law.’ ‘ My lord,’ replied the duke, ‘ we shall never get there by wishing it: the distance is too great.’ ‘ That is true,’ answered the king; ‘ but I think, if I pleased, I could very soon be there.’ ‘ Then it must be by dint of hard riding,’ said the duke of Touraine, ‘ and not otherwise, and I also can do that; but it would be through means of my horse.’ ‘ Come,’ said the king, ‘ who will be there first? you or I: let us wager on this.’ ‘ With all my heart,’ answered the duke, who would at all times exert himself to get money. A wager was, in consequence, made between them, for five hundred francs, who should the first arrive at

at Paris, setting out, on the morrow, at the same hour, taking with them only one servant, or one knight, as they pleased. No one attempted to prevent the race from taking place, and they set out as they had settled it: the lord de Garencieres accompanied the king, and the lord de Viefville the duke of Touraine. Thus these four, who were young and active, rode on night and day, frequently changing horses, or had themselves conveyed in carts, when they wished to take any repose.

The duke of Bourbon returned by Puy in Auvergne to his own country, and, on his road, visited his father-in-law, the dauphin of Auvergne, the dauphiness, and their children, who were eight in number, brothers and sisters, to the duchess of Bourbon by a second marriage.

The king of France and his brother continued their journey with much exertion, to gain the wager. Consider what pains these two young princes must have taken, for all their establishments were left behind. The king took four days and a half to perform the journey to Paris, and the duke of Touraine only four days and one third\*, so near were they to each other; but the duke won the wager, by the king sleeping eight hours at Troyes in Champagne. The duke embarked on the Seine, and went as far as Melun by water:

---

\* The distance from Montpellier to Paris is 191 leagues.—  
GAZETTEER.

there

there he remounted and rode on to Paris, straight to the hôtel de Saint Pol, where the queen and the duchess resided, and enquired after the king (for he was ignorant whether he was arrived or not), and was rejoiced to learn that he was not come. He said to the queen, 'Madam, you will very shortly hear of him.' This was true; for not long after the duke's arrival, the king made his appearance, and the duke ran to him and said, 'My lord, I have won the wager: order me to be paid.' 'That is but just,' replied the king, 'and it shall be done.' They then related to the ladies their adventures on the road, and how they had come in four days and a half from Montpellier, which was distant from Paris one hundred and fifty leagues. The ladies turned the whole into a joke, and laughed at it; but they were sensible how greatly they must have been fatigued, and nothing but their youth and courage could have borne them through it. You must know, the duke of Touraine insisted on the wager being paid in ready money.

## CHAP. IX.

THE DEATH OF POPE URBAN AT ROME, CALLED  
THE ANTI-POPE.—POPE CLEMENT WRITES TO  
THE KING OF FRANCE, HIS UNCLES, AND, THE  
UNIVERSITY OF PARIS ON THE OCCASION.—  
THE ELECTION OF POPE BONIFACE BY THE  
ROMAN CARDINALS.

**A**BOUT this period, pope Urban VI. died at Rome, to the sorrow of the Romans, who loved him much. He was buried, with great solemnity, in the church of Saint Peter ; and, when this ceremony was ended, the cardinals formed a conclave to elect another pope, and hastened the matter that it might be done before any intelligence of the death of Urban could be carried to Avignon.

Pope Clement and his cardinals did not hear of the decease of Urban until the tenth day after it had happened. They immediately assembled at the palace, where many proposals were discussed ; and they had strong hope that the schism of the church would be concluded, and an union formed of the two parties ; for this error had lasted too long. They imagined that the cardinals at Rome would not be in any hurry to form a conclave, but would agree to acknowledge the pope of Avignon, and were indulging in these flattering hopes, when other accounts forced them to think differently.

They

They signified to the king of France the death of Urban, whom they called the anti-pope, and entreated him to support the pretensions of Clement, by writing in his favour to his cousins the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary, the count de Vertus, and to the duke of Austria, who had acknowledged the late pope Urban, and to request they would agree to restore peace to the church; for that there ought not to be any variation in the faith, and, as there is but one God in Heaven, there cannot, nor ought there to be, more than one vicegerent on earth.

When this information arrived at Paris, the duke of Burgundy, to whom the pope and cardinals had likewise written to the same purport, was with his nephew. The king appeared very much pleased on hearing it, and said to the duke,— ‘Good uncle, we had a great desire to march a large army to Rome, and destroy these unbelievers; but this is checked by the death of the anti-pope, for pope Clement and his cardinals have assured us that Urban is dead. They suppose that there will not be any conclave held at Rome to elect another, but that the cardinals will submit themselves to the obedience of pope Clement. He has likewise requested, that we would write to our cousins the emperor of Germany, his brother the king of Hungary, to the count de Vertus and to the duke of Austria, to secure their favour in his support. What would you advise us to do?’

‘ My lord,’ replied the duke of Burgundy, ‘ it is very true that Urban is dead ; but we know nothing of the state of the cardinals at Rome, nor of the Romans ; nor whether these cardinals mean to persist in their opinion. It will be difficult for them to change, as the Romans are their masters, and as they formerly forced them to elect the archbishop of Bari pope, whom they obeyed as long as he lived : they may again force them to elect another according to their pleasure. You have therefore no occasion to be in any haste respecting this matter, nor to write to those who will not do much for you in the business, as they have already shewn. Remain quiet, therefore, until you shall hear further on the subject ; for it may happen that the cardinals at Rome may be of one mind, and, though differing with each other, may dissemble with the Romans, and acknowledge no other pope but Clement ; and, in order to keep the Romans in good humour, promise them that Clement shall fix his residence at Rome, which he will very readily consent to, if the matter could be brought to depend on that. Should this appear probable, it will then be time for you to write to those Christian kings and lords who hold contrary opinions in religion to you, to entreat they would unite to put an end to the schism, and to promote the re-establishment of union in the church. This is what you ought to do ; for we are not as yet assured what turn the business may take, and it will not be long before we have further intelligence.’

When

When the duke had ended this speech to the king and council, no one made any reply; for they thought the duke's reasoning unanswerable. The king seemed convinced by it, and said; 'Good uncle, we believe your reasons, [for you see farther into church affairs than we do; and we will not take any steps in the matter without your advice and approbation.' The business was here ended, and other matters discussed.

The intelligence of the death of Urban caused great disputes among the students at the university. They ceased following their usual studies, and were employed in disputing how the cardinals would act; whether they would elect a pope in the room of Urban, or acknowledge the pope of Avignon. They made it the subject of argument, and it was carried on with much heat and animosity. They knew that Clement had written to the king, to the duke of Touraine, to the duke of Burgundy, and to the ministers, on the state of his affairs; and he had also written, in general terms, to the university, that that body might do as much as was possible, and with all diligence, for his assistance. The students proposed several subjects of argument, which were warmly discussed among themselves. Those interested for Clement said,—' It is time for the king and our lords in France to write to the chiefs in Christendom, such as the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary, the lord of Milan, the duke of Austria, and all who hold contrary opinions respecting the pope, and press them to return to the true faith; for it would do them infinite honour.'

Three times, in three several days, the principal students of the university assembled, and went in a body to the hôtel de St. Pol, to entreat the king and his council to put an end to the schism, and to comply with the solicitation of the pope, who had written to them in such humble terms. They, however, were not admitted, nor had any answer given to them, which made them very discontented: however, the following news, which arrived a few days after, appeased them.

The Roman cardinals had assembled in conclave, and elected the cardinal of Naples, a prudent and courageous clerk, to the papacy, who took the name of Boniface \*. The king of France and his lords, on hearing this, were very melancholy, and thought the schism in the church likely to continue for a long time. 'Now see,' said the duke of Burgundy to the king, 'of how little avail your letters would have been, which they were urging you to write: it has happened just as I foresaw.' 'My good uncle,' replied the king, 'you have indeed judged truly.'

Pardons were offered in abundance by Boniface, and notified to all the clergy in the different kingdoms under his obedience. Those who wished to gain them set out on their journey to Rome; but when they approached near Ancona and Romagna, they ran great risks; for sir Bernard de la Salle, who guarded this frontier, and made war on the

---

\* Pietro, or Perrin de Tomacelli, cardinal of Naples, pope Boniface IX.

Romans in the name of Clement, had these pilgrims watched on all the roads, and did them much evil, several of whom were slain or lost. We will for the present leave speaking of these popes, and introduce other events.

**CHAP. X.**

**THE SURRENDER OF THE STRONG CASTLE OF VENTADOUR IN LIMOUSIN, THAT HAD BEEN THE CHIEF RESIDENCE OF GEOFFRY TETE-NOIR.**

YOU have before heard how Geoffry Tête-noir was master of the castle of Ventadour, which he had held against all the force sent against him as long as he lived; that he had laid the country under contributions upwards of thirty leagues round; and that when he died, he had on his death-bed named his two nephews, Alleyne and Peter Roux, to succeed him in the command, to whom all the leaders of that garrison had in his presence sworn obedience and fidelity.

After the decease of Geoffry Tête-noir, these two brothers governed successfully for some time, keeping the whole country under subjection. This castle belonged to the duke of Berry by purchase from the count de Montpensier, and his son, John of Berry, bore its title; but, though the garrison

gave him much vexation, he could not then amend it. He had besieged it several times with block-houses, and pressed it as much as he could, but in vain: the garrison held his attempts cheap, and fellied out, whenever they pleased, to overrun the country. The two brothers would not pay any attention to the truce that had been agreed to between France and England, saying they were not bound to abide by it, but would make war when and where they pleased. The two countries of Auvergne and Limousin suffered greatly; and to remedy it, a gallant knight of Auvergne, sir William le Bouteiller, with sir John Bonne-lance, sir Lewis d'Ambiere, and other knights and squires from Limousin and Auvergne, erected block-houses before Ventadour, and had there remained the whole of the season, at the charge of the country.

It was about this time, as I was told, that the governors laid a plot to entrap sir William le Bouteiller, and sir John Bonne-lance, who had done them much mischief. They determined to have it told these two knights in a secret way, that they were desirous of surrendering the fort for a certain sum of florins; for they were tired of remaining there longer, and wished to return to their own country or elsewhere. They imagined the knights would readily comply, for the duke of Berry was eager to gain it on any terms; and they resolved not to ask a larger sum than what might be instantly procured. One brother asked the other, 'What sum shall we fix on?' 'Ten thousand francs, for that will be enough, as we shall have

have beside the bodies of the two knights by an ambush we will place in one of the towers.'

Consider how foolish these two Bretons must have been to imagine they could deceive two such knights and keep their money. If evil befel them, they are unworthy of regret or pity. Following their plan, they sent one of their varlets out of the castle, saying,—' Go as far as the French block-houses: allow thyself to be taken, but demand to be carried to sir William le Bou-teiller or sir John Bonne-lance, which of them thou pleasest, give them these letters, and require an answer, as their contents are of consequence to them and to us.' The servant, who thought nothing evil, said he would obey their commands, and advanced to the nearest block-house of the French. On perceiving him, those within came out to meet him and demanded his business: he said, he wanted to speak with sir William le Bou-teiller or sir John Bonne-lance. He was conducted to them, for the two knights happened to be then together. When in their presence, he bowed and took them aside to deliver his letters, saying that sir Alleyne and sir Peter Roux had sent him to them. They were much surprised on hearing this, and that the governors of Ventadour should write to them. They took the letters, and read them; but their contents were merely to say, that Alleyne and Peter Roux would willingly have a parley with them on something to their advantage. When they had perused the letters, they were more astonished than before, and suspected

some treachery. They, however, consulted together on what could be wanted with them, and returned a verbal message, that if the governors wished to meet them without the castle, they would promise them, and those who should accompany them, perfect security for their persons until they had re-entered the place.

Such was the answer the varlet brought back to his masters. Sir Peter said to sir Alleyne, ' May we confide in such promises?' ' Oh yes,' replied his brother; ' for consider their word is given, and they are loyal knights incapable of breaking it. We will inform them of our intended surrender, which they will eagerly accept.'

On the morrow, about eight o'clock, they ordered the wicket adjoining the gate to be opened, and the bridge to be lowered down, and they leant on the chains until sir William le Bouteiller and sir John Bonne-lance arrived, who dismounted before the bridge, and ordered their attendants to retire. When the two Breton governors, on the bridge, saw them, they asked, ' May we come and converse with you in safety?' ' Yes,' replied the knights; ' but is there no treachery on your side?' ' Oh no,' answered the Bretons; ' it is now truce between us.' ' Well then, come with all security, and tell us what you have to say.' Peter and Alleyne Roux then passed the bridge, and went to the place where they were waiting for them.

The two knights said, ' What is the subject of the treaty or parley you wish to have with us? Are you inclined to surrender Ventadour?' ' Yes,' said

said they, 'but on conditions. We only ask ten thousand francs for the stores; for we are tired of carrying on the war longer, and wish to retire to Brittany or to whatever other country we may chuse.' The two knights were rejoiced at this proposal, and replied, — ' You offer terms we shall not refuse; but at this moment we have not such a sum. We will, however, instantly set about providing it.' ' Well,' answered the governors, ' when you have got it, let us know, and we will keep to our offer: but let the matter be most secret, for if the garrison should hear of it, they would instantly murder us, and you would be disappointed in your expectations of gaining the place.' Sir William le Bouteiller replied, ' Never fear us: we will manage the business in such a manner that you shall not incur any danger.' On this, they separated: the brothers re-entered Ventadour, and the knights returned to their quarters.

Sir William le Bouteiller and sir John Bonnelance believing this transaction was honourable, no way suspecting the Bretons meant to deceive them and gain possession of their persons as well as money, instantly wrote as fair-languaged letters as they could to the duke of Berry, who at that time was at Riom in Auvergne. They desired one of their gentlemen, who had been well educated, called Guyonnel de Saint-Vydel, to carry the letter, and, having informed him of the fact, desired he would forget nothing, in his conversation with the duke of Berry, that might induce him to agree to the terms of surrender; for they thought

thought he would be well pleased, as he had been for a long time very anxious to get possession of Ventadour. The squire having received the letter, and his instructions, what to say and how to act, left the block-house, and, traversing Limousin and Auvergne, rode on until he came to Riom, where I believe he found the duke of Berry.

On entering his presence, he knelt and gave the duke the letters, recommending to him the two knights, as he knew well how to do. The duke took the letter and read it: when he had a short time considered its contents, he was so well pleased, that he ordered his attendants to take particular care of the squire, which was done. The duke called to him such of his council and treasurers as were with him, and said,—‘Here is great news. Our knights, who are blockading Ventadour, write us word they have opened a treaty with Alleyne and Peter Roux, who are willing to surrender that place for ten thousand francs. That is no large sum: it has cost Limousin and Auvergne, yearly, sixty thousand francs, as composition-money, to be unmolested by the garrison. We wish to accept their offer, and as speedily as may be, lest they should repent of having made it. Now, treasurers, find me instantly ten thousand francs. We will make a loan of them, as is but just; and when we are in possession of this castle, will levy a tax on all the lands which have paid contribution, that will doubly repay us.’

‘My lord,’ replied the treasurers, ‘we are prepared: only give us five or six days to collect it.’

‘You

‘ You shall have them,’ said the duke. Thus was the matter settled. The treasurers produced the sum in golden crowns, and in francs of France, which were packed up in four small boxes.

The same day on which those who were to carry the money to the two knights were on their departure, every thing being ready for their setting out, the dauphin of Auvergne and the lord Renel arrived at Riom, on business with the duke of Berry, such as was common between great lords. They were made welcome by the duke, who was so pleased at the thought of gaining Ventadour so cheaply, that he could not refrain from making them acquainted with it, and shewing them the letters from sir William le Bouteiller and sir John Bonne-lance. When they had perused them, they were silent, and the duke noticing it, said,—‘ What are you considering? Have you any suspicions of deceit? Tell me, before the money be sent off.’ ‘ My lord,’ replied the dauphin, ‘ you know for how long a time the count d’Armagnac and myself have been employed by the countries of Limousin, Cahorsin, Rouergue and Auvergne, to gain possession, by force or otherwise, of all the enemy’s forts in these seneschalships. We have entered into several treaties with many of them, but we never could any way make the least impression on the garrison of Ventadour, to induce them to surrender; and scarcely would they deign to return us an answer when we sent to them. If, therefore, they have agreed to the treaty you have shewn us, it cannot be from want of provision; for, should

should no purveyances enter the fort for eight years, I know they have enough; and it is this which astonishes us, and makes us suspect treachery; for such men at arms, when shut up in fortresses, have a lively imagination, and, when it turns to wickedness, they know too well how to succeed: therefore, my lord, be cautious how you act.'

'In God's name,' answered the duke of Berry, 'you do not tell us any thing extraordinary, but have well spoken, when you thus advise us; and I will take more precautions than I at first intended.'

He then called to him a knight, whose name was sir Peter Mespin, and said,—' You will go with the ransom-money for Ventadour to the block-houses before that place, and tell sir William le Bouteiller and sir John Bonne-lance, from us, to be very cautious how they act, respecting their treaty, and not to put too much confidence in these Bretons of Ventadour; for that we have had such intelligence concerning them, of which they are ignorant, they must be very prudent and observing.'

The knight undertook the journey, and, being soon ready, departed with the money from Riom, and rode on until he arrived at the block-houses, where he was kindly received by his companions. The money was unpacked, and placed in security. Sir Peter Mespin, after some general conversation, told his message as follows: ' My lord of Berry orders me to inform you, sir William and sir John, that you must act with the greatest precaution in this

this treaty with the governors of Ventadour, that you may not lose your own persons and the money he sends you by me, for that he has had accounts given him of the characters of these people that displease him much, which is the reason he is anxious for you to act with prudence to be a match for them, as he suspects this offer is only made to betray you. The countries of Auvergne and Limousin would many times have given sixty thousand francs for the evacuation of Ventadour, which the governors well knew, and now they offer it to you for ten thousand : it is this which makes my lord suspect treachery.'

The two knights were for a moment pensive, and then said,—‘ Two heads are better than one. You have well spoken, and we thank you for the advice you have given. You will remain here to assist us, which will be but right, for within two days we shall know how the matter will turn out.’ Sir Peter Mespin replied, he would cheerfully stay with them.

Shortly after this the two knights sent one of their servants to the castle, for there was now a truce between them, to let the governors know the ten thousand francs were come, and that they were ready to complete the bargain. They replied, they would keep to their agreement, that they might come when they pleased, or inform them when they were to bring the money.

Alleyne and Peter Roux, who had no good inclinations, as was proved against them, had already made their preparations for the capture of the two  
knights.

knights. They had thus planned it. At the entrance of the castle of Ventadour, and within side, is a large tower, that commands the gate; and, without having first gained this tower, the castle cannot be won. It was for this reason it was always kept well stored with artillery, provision and men, that in case the castle should be surprised, the garrison might retire thither in safety.

The two Bretons, whose heads were full of malice, posted in this tower thirty determined men, armed at all points; who, when the French should think themselves in secure possession of the castle, towards late in the evening, were to sally forth and slay all without mercy. Every thing being now ready, they sent to sir William le Bouteiller and sir John Bonne-lance that they might bring the money in all security to the castle, the gates of which would be thrown open to them.

The French knights were all alive at this message, and said to the servant who had brought it, "Return to thy masters, and tell them from us, that we will be with them to-morrow morning."

When the servant was gone, the two knights assembled a larger council than ever they had before done, on account of the orders sir Peter Mespin had brought from the duke of Berry.

It was resolved in this council to place an ambuscade near the castle, and that the two knights should go thither accompanied by thirty men armed secretly like themselves. On their entrance into Ventadour, they were cautiously to examine every part of it: if they should perceive any thing that could

could induce them to suspect treachery, they were to sound a horn and seize the draw-bridge. On hearing this horn, the ambuscade was to advance full gallop, dismount at the bridge, and gain the castle.

In the manner in which they had planned it the project was executed ; and on the morrow morning, all being prepared, they rode forward, and placed a large ambush of six score lances, and then, with thirty companions, secretly armed, went to Venta-dour, carrying sir Peter Mespin to assist them with his advice.

They did not forget the ransom-money, which was neatly packed up in three baskets, on the backs of two strong horses. They found Alleyne and Peter Roux at the barriers, which were thrown quite back on their approach : having passed them and entered the gate, the brothers would have closed the barriers again ; but the French knights said,—‘ Let them remain : is it a fair bargain or not ? You know you have engaged to surrender the castle for ten thousand francs in hard money : they are ready, and on the two sumpter horses you see, If you act loyally to us, we will do the same to you.’

They knew not what answer to make to this speech ; but to prevent them having any suspicions, they said, ‘ You say well ; and we are willing to act as fairly as yourselves.’

The French party passed on, and the barriers remained open. Had they been closed, the ambuscade would never have been able to arrive in time to

to counteract the trick the Bretons intended playing them, and their scheme would have succeeded. All having entered the gate, Alleyne and Peter Roux went to shut it ; but the French said to Alleyne,—‘ Let it be open : we wish it, for we are ready to pay you down the money as agreed upon between us.’ ‘ Be it so,’ replied the Bretons : ‘ let us see the cash.’ ‘ That you shall,’ said the French, and instantly spread on the ground a sheet, on which they emptied the florins. While the two Bretons were examining the money, which made a handsome heap, the knights were doing the same to the castle ; and, in consequence, sir Peter Mespin said to sir William le Bouteiller, ‘ Have that tower opened before you count the money, for there may perchance be in it an ambush to surprise us, and we may lose our lives as well as our money.’

On this, sir William said to Alleyne Roux, ‘ Let that tower be opened, for we will have that done before we proceed any farther.’ Alleyne replied, ‘ that he would do no such thing, for the keys were lost.’ The moment he had uttered this, the knights were more suspicious than before, and said ; ‘ Alleyne, it is impossible that the keys of the principal tower should be lost. Open it by fair means, or we will have it forced ; for you have promised to surrender to us the castle, as it is, without fraud or treachery, for the sum of ten thousand francs, which you now see lying before you.’ Alleyne answered,—‘ I will neither open it myself, nor suffer it to be done, until I shall have received and

and placed in security the whole money: when that is done, I will seek for the keys.' The knights replied,—' We will not wait so long; and we tell you plainly, that we expect no favour from your last speeches, which clearly indicate that you mean to deceive us. We therefore arrest you, Peter and Alleyne Roux, in the names of the king, our lord, and the duke of Berry. The tower shall be opened by force, though the doors of it be broken; and every part of it, as well as of the castle, shall be minutely searched, to see if you have not placed an ambush to surprise us, and regain the castle. Should any such be found, you are lost, past redemption, as in justice due to treason; but if, on the contrary, the castle be in the situation it ought loyally to be, from an honourable bargain, we will punctually keep every article of our treaty, and you shall be safely conducted whithersoever you may please; even as far as the gates of Avignon, should you desire it.'

The two brothers were thunderstruck, and half dead, on being thus arrested; and, hearing this declaration of the knights, their courage failed them, and they repented having gone so far, for they found their intentions must now be discovered. The French knights saw plainly they were guilty of what they had suspected, and that the castle was not meant to be surrendered. They made a sign for him who bore the horn to sound for their ambuscade to advance: which having done, those in ambush stuck spurs to their horses, saying, ' Let us hasten to Ventadour, for we are wanted:

our people have not found things as they expected, and have been deceived by Alleyne and Peter Roux.'

They were soon at the castle, for it was not far distant, and the barriers and gate being open, though well guarded by the French, for the Bretons were no longer masters, they entered the place, and found their captains in the court talking to the garrison. The governors were more astonished than before, on seeing themselves thus surrounded by their enemies; for they knew they had acted dishonourably.

Those within the great tower were ignorant of what was going forward; for the openings in the walls were too high for them to see what passed. Some said, 'We hear in the court a great noise: our people may perhaps be tricked, for the French are a cunning race. We thought to deceive, but we may be deceived, and Alleyne, as well as ourselves, may be entrapped and taken; for we cannot get out without his permission.' They would willingly have been any where else; for their governors had brought them into a melancholy situation.

Sir William le Bouteiller and Sir John Bonnehance, finding themselves to be inferior in force, spoke out more boldly their sentiments, and ordered the cash, which was scattered over the floor, to be collected and replaced in the bunker, before the face of the two brothers, who were surrounded by the French. They said: 'Alleyne and Peter, give us the keys of the tower; for it must and shall

shall be examined, to see if any one be within it ;' but they answered, in the hope of prolonging the time,—‘ Begin your search elsewhere, and come here at the last.’ But the knights replied ; ‘ Al-leyne, you trifle too much with us, for we will examine this tower first ; and, if you make any further resistance, we will put you to death with our daggers.’ On hearing this, they feared they would put their threat into execution ; for all avoid death as long as they can, though, in good truth, it would have been more honourable for them had they been slain, than carried away, and afterwards punished for this act, by a disgraceful death, as you will speedily hear in this history,

During the dispute, Peter Roux thought of an expedient to excuse their conduct, but this was of no avail, and said ; ‘ My lord William, and you sir John, it is indeed true that there are in this tower thirty armed men, whither my brother and self have with much difficulty forced them ; for we well knew they would not assent to our treaty with you. It is for this reason that we have confined them in that tower until you should be masters of the castle ; and we will, with your permissions, leave them there, to be your prisoners. Give us the money, the whole, or part of it, as you are bounden to do, and let us go away.’

The knights were tolerably satisfied on hearing this ; but sir William le Bouteiller, having considered a little, said ; ‘ Whatever truth may be in what you have told us, before we unpack the money again, we must have all the keys of the castle

delivered to us, and the different parts pointed out to which they lead.' Alleyne, seeing he could not longer delay, sent for them to the room wherein they were deposited. On their being brought to the court, the knights said, ' Now, explain to us what gates they unlock, and whither they lead.' Very much against their will, they pointed out the keys of the great tower, for their destruction lay in it. When they had possession of them, they opened its gates, and found the thirty companions completely armed, who had been therein hid.

Alleyne was much cast down, when he saw the French knights draw themselves up in array before the gate, and heard sir William le Bouteiller say,— ' You are hidden within this tower, come forth instantly and without fear, under pain of being all put to death. We shall make you our prisoners, and you need not fear any punishment if you tell us the truth.' When they saw and heard the French offer them pardon, taking them as prisoners only, they flung down their staves and arms, and surrendered, for defence would not have been of any avail.

These men were then separated, and examined one by one in the presence of Alleyne and Peter Roux, and acknowledged the intended treason, which they now could no longer deny. The French knights addressed them,— ' It is very displeasing to us, that you should have been guilty of so disgraceful a crime. We shall not punish you for it: as it seems to us so heinous, we shall leave it to my lord of Berry; and, if he will shew you mercy,

mercy, we shall not object. We rather hope he may be so inclined, from the great pleasure the possession of this castle will give him, which was the thing in the world he was most anxious to gain.'

This speech gave some hopes to the two brothers, who found themselves fallen into a similar trap to what they had laid for others. They were confined in rooms well guarded, and the garrison in the towers and in other parts of the castle. It was then thoroughly visited, and found full of stores and provision; all of which they left untouched, contenting themselves with the money and arms they discovered, and which, as fair plunder, was divided among them; but the prisoners were given to the knights.

Thus, as I have related, was the strong castle of Ventadour regained by the French. Sir William le Bouteiller appointed a valiant and prudent squire of Limousin, called Peter Madich, governor, with thirty good lances for its defence. He ransomed such as were deserving of it; but having discovered among the prisoners several renegade Frenchmen, who had been cruel plunderers, he had their heads cut off, or hung them on a new gallows that had been erected in front of the castle. When all things had been settled, the two knights resolved to ride to Riom, to wait on the duke of Berry, and carry Alleyne and Peter Roux with them.

News was soon spread abroad that Ventadour was retaken, to the great joy of the inhabitants of

Auvergne and Limousin ; for the enemies of the realm had kept possession of it fifteen years, and, during that time, had done much mischief to the country, and had greatly impoverished it.

Sir William le Bouteiller had found in the castle of Ventadour a young and handsome squire from Brittany, called Monadich, a cousin to Geoffrey Tête-noir, who had lately left a convent in Brittany, and come thither to learn the art of war, for he would not be a monk. The French knights wanted to have him beheaded, or hanged like the others ; but sir William took compassion on him, and saved his life, for which he swore he would faithfully serve him, and remain for the time to come a loyal Frenchman.

They made no long stay after this, but, having pulled down the block-houses, went to the duke of Berry. The men at arms separated, each going to his own home. The knights arrived at Riom, with the two brothers prisoners. They were much cast down, and on the road entreated sir William and sir John to interest themselves in their behalf, that the duke might not be too severe on them. The duke was with his duchess at Riom, and most kindly received the two knights : he considered the gain of the castle of Ventadour as a very gallant exploit, for which he made them handsome and rich gifts.

The knights asked him, what was his pleasure respecting the two prisoners. He said, he would consider of it ; which having done, it was thought, by his council, most adviseable to send them to the

the king at Paris. The sénéchal of Auvergne was sent for, and to him were delivered the Bretons. He carried them to Paris, where they were confined in the castle of Saint Anthony\*, under the guard of the viscount d'Afer, who was at the time governor of it. They were not kept long in prison, but delivered over to the provost of Paris, who carried them to the Châtelet, where they were tried and judged guilty of death, as traitors and robbers. They were then given up to the hangman, who placed them bound in a cart, and carried them through the streets, with sound of trumpet, to a place called Les Halles, and put on the pillory, which was turned four times round, that the populace might view them. Their actions were then read aloud; after which they were beheaded and quartered, and their quarters fixed to the four principal gates of the town. Thus did Alleyne and Peter Roux lose their castle of Ventadour, and forfeit their own lives by a disgraceful death.

---

\* Probably the Bastille, which was at the gate of St. Anthony before the Revolution in 1789.

## CHAP. XI.

THREE FRENCH KNIGHTS HOLD A TOURNAMENT AT SAINT INGLEVERE, NEAR CALAIS, AND DEFEND THE LISTS, FOR THIRTY DAYS, AGAINST ALL COMERS, FROM ENGLAND AND ELSEWHERE.

AT this season, the truce between England and France was punctually observed on sea and land by both parties, excepting a few pillagers in Auvergne, who continued a war against the peasants, on each side the river Dordogne. Their principal leaders, who had surrendered on capitulation, were not openly guilty of any breach of the truce, but secretly encouraged the mischiefs that were daily committed in Auvergne. Such complaints were made of this to the king of France, that he determined, with the advice of his council, to remonstrate with the king of England on the conduct of these pillagers, who, notwithstanding the truce, still carried on a war in Auvergne and the adjoining country, which could not be suffered, neither ought it to be. I believe the king of England excused himself, by saying that those who had committed the acts complained of were lawless people, over whom he had no controul.

During the time in which these things were passing, the three knights before mentioned, who had undertaken to maintain the lists against all comers,

comers, at Saint Inglevere, near Calais, namely, sir Boucicaut the younger, the lord Reginald de Roye and the lord de Saimpi, were making preparations to fulfil their engagement. This tournament had been proclaimed in many countries, but especially in England, where it had caused much surprise, and excited several knights and squires, who were fond of adventures and deeds of arms, to confer on the subject. Some said they would be blame worthy, if they did not cross the sea, when the distance was so short to Calais, pay a visit to these knights and tilt with them. I will name those who were most eager in these conversations. The first was sir John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, sir John Courtenay\*, sir John Traicton†, sir John Goulouffre, sir John Roussel‡, sir Thomas Scorabonne§, sir William Clifeton||, sir William Clinton, sir William Taillebourg¶, sir Godfrey de Seta, sir William de Haquenay\*\*, sir John Vobeads, sir John d'Ambreticourt, sir John Beaumont and many more, to the amount of upwards of one hundred knights and squires, who said,—‘ Let us prepare ourselves to attend this tournament near Calais ; for these French knights only hold it that they may have our company :

\* My MSS. have sir Peter Courtenay.

† Sir John Traicton. Q. Drayton. The MSS. Peter.

‡ Sir John Roussel. Q. Russel.

§ Sir Thomas Scorabonne. Q. Sherborne.

|| Sir William Clifeton. Q. Clifton.

¶ Sir William Taillebourg. Q. Tallboys.

\*\* Sir William de Haquenay. Q. Hackney.

it is well done, and shews they do not want courage: let us not disappoint them.'

This challenge was made so public in England that many who had no intention of taking part themselves, said, they would go thither to witness the performances of others. Such knights and squires as proposed being there, when the appointed term was approaching, sent beforehand their purveyances, and arms for tilting and for war, to Calais. Sir John Holland, half brother to the king of England, was the first to cross the sea: more than sixty knights and squires accompanied him, and took up their quarters in Calais.

At the beginning of the charming month of May, the three before mentioned young French knights were fully prepared to maintain their challenge in the lists at Saint Inglevere. They first came to Boulogne, where I know not how many days they tarried, and then went to the monastery of Saint Inglevere. On their arrival, they learnt that numbers of English knights and squires were come to Calais. This gave them much pleasure; and to hasten the business, and that news should be carried to the English, they ordered three rich vermillion-coloured pavilions to be pitched near the appointed place for the lists, and before each were suspended two targets, for peace or war, emblazoned with the arms of each lord. It was ordered, that such as were desirous of performing any deed of arms should touch, or send to have touched, one or both of these targets according to

to their pleasure, and they would be tilted with agreeably to their request.

On the 21st of the month of May, as it had been proclaimed, the three knights were properly armed and their horses ready saddled according to the laws of the tournament. On the same day, those knights who were in Calais fellied forth, either as spectators or tilters, and, being arrived at the spot, drew up on one side. The place of the tournament was smooth, and green with gras.

Sir John Holland was the first who sent his squire to touch the war-target of sir Boucicaut, who instantly issued from his pavilion completely armed. Having mounted his horse, and grasped his spear, which was stiff and well steeled, they took their distances. When the two knights had for a short time eyed each other, they spurred their horses and met full gallop with such force that sir Boucicaut pierced the shield of the earl of Huntingdon, and the point of his lance slipped along his arm, but without wounding him. The two knights, having passed, continued their gallop to the end of the list. This course was much praised. At the second course, they hit each other slightly, but no harm was done; and their horses refused to complete the third.

The earl of Huntingdon, who wished to continue the tilt, and was heated, returned to his place, expecting that sir Boucicaut would call for his lance; but he did not, and shewed plainly he would not that day tilt more with the earl. Sir John

John Holland, seeing this, sent his squire to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. This knight, who was waiting for the combat, sallied out from his pavilion, and took his lance and shield. When the earl saw he was ready, he violently spurred his horse, as did the lord de Saimpi. They couched their lances, and pointed them at each other. At the onset, their horses crossed; notwithstanding which, they met; but by this crossing, which was blamed, the earl was unhelmed. He returned to his people, who soon re-helmeted him; and, having resumed their lances, they met full gallop, and hit each other with such force in the middle of their shields, that they would have been unhorsed had they not kept tight seats by the pressure of their legs against the horses' sides. They went to the proper places, where they refreshed themselves and took breath.

Sir John Holland, who had a great desire to shine at this tournament, had his helmet braced and grasped his spear again; when the lord de Saimpi, seeing him advance on a gallop, did not decline meeting, but, spurring his horse on instantly, they gave blows on their helmets, that were luckily of well-tempered steel, which made sparks of fire fly from them. At this course, the lord de Saimpi lost his helmet; but the two knights continued their career, and returned to their places.

This tilt was much praised; and the English and French said, that the earl of Huntingdon, sir Boucicaut and the lord de Saimpi, had excellently

lently well justed, without sparing or doing themselves any damage. The earl wished to break another lance in honour of his lady, but it was refused him. He then quitted the lists, to make room for others, for he had run his six lances with such ability and courage as gained him praise from all fides.

A young and gallant knight of England next came forth, called the earl-marshall \*, who sent, according to the regulations, to touch the war-target of sir Reginald de Roye. This being done, sir Reginald came from his pavilion completely armed, and mounted his horse that was ready for him: having had his shield and helmet buckled on, he seized his lance and took his distance. The two knights spurred their horses, but, at this first course, failed in their strokes, from their horses swerving out of the line, to their great vexation. Sir Reginald was hit with the second lance, and had his own broken. At the third course, they met with such force that the fire sparkled from their helmets, and the earl was unhelmed. He continued his career to his own place, but justed no more that day, as he had done sufficiently.

The lord Clifford †, a valiant knight, and cousin-german to the late sir John Chandos, of famed

---

\* I suppose this must be Thomas Mowbray, earl of Nottingham and earl-marshall: he was afterwards created duke of Norfolk. See Dugdale.

† Froissart calls him sir Louis de Clifford, but he was Thomas lord Clifford of Cumberland. See Dugdale.

renown,

renown, then advanced, and sent to have the war-shield of sir Boucicaut touched with a rod. Sir Boucicaut instantly appeared, and, having his armour laced, mounted his horse: placing his lance in its rest, they met full gallop, and made, by their blows, the fire fly from their helmets, but they neither broke their lances nor lost their stirrups: having passed, they returned to their places, making ready for the second course. This was done without any way sparing themselves: sir Boucicaut broke his lance and was unhelmed, but did not for this fall to the ground. Lord Clifford returned to his place, to prepare himself for another course, but sir Boucicaut did not again put on his helmet. Lord Clifford, noticing this, resolved to perform a tilt with another knight, and sent his squire to touch the shield of the lord de Saimpi.

The lord de Saimpi being ready, sallied forth from his pavilion: they ran at each other with great force, met full, and lord Clifford broke his lance into three pieces against the target of his adversary. In return, the lord de Saimpi struck off his helmet, and both continued their career to their places. The lord Clifford tilted no more that day, for the spectators said he had honourably and valorously borne himself.

Sir Henry Beaumont \* then came forward, and sent to have the target of sir Boucicaut touched, who was instantly ready to reply to the call,

---

\* Lord Beaumont. See Dugdale.

having

having not dismounted from the tilts with lord Clifford. The lord Beaumont did not manage his lance well, and hit Boucicaut on the side ; but sir Boucicaut struck him so full on the middle of his shield that it drove him to the ground, and continued his course. Lord Beaumont was raised up by his attendants and remounted. The lord de Saimpi then presented himself, and they tilted two courses very handsomely without hurt to either.

Sir Peter Courteney, who was anxious to engage and to run six lances, sent a squire to touch with a rod the three shields of war. This caused a good deal of surprise, and he was asked what were his intentions by so doing. He replied, that he wished to tilt with each of the French knights two lances, if no misfortune befel him, and he entreated they would comply with his request. They were ready to consent to it, and sir Reginald de Roye first offered himself. Having made themselves ready, they spurred their horses, and took good aim not to miss their stroke ; but, from the restiveness of their horses, they failed. They were much vexed, and returned to their places. On the second course, they met full gallop ; and sir Reginald de Roye, having unhelmed his adversary, returned gently towards his pavilion, his two courses being completed. Sir Peter Courteney being armed once more, the lord de Saimpi advanced, and their lances were broken at the first shock : they continued their course, when new lances were given them. They advanced towards each other furiously, and the

lord

lord de Sainpi hit sir Peter, whose horse swerved a little ; but sir Peter struck off his helmet, and rode on at a gentle pace to his post.

Sir Rouscicaut now came to complete the two other courses ; and at their onset they struck each other on the shield so rudely that the two horses were suddenly checked in their career : no other damage ensued. At the second course, they were both unhelmed. When these six tilts were done, sir Peter requested, as a favour, to run one more, with any of the three knights who pleased, but it was refused ; and he was told, that he had done enough that day.

An English knight, called sir John Gouloufre, came forth, armed from head to foot, and sent his squire to touch the war-shield of sir Reginald de Roye. The knight obeyed the summons, and both advanced full gallop. They hit each other's helmets, but were neither unhelmed nor had their lances broken. Their horses refused to run the second course, to their great vexation. At the third tilt they struck their shields and broke their lances. They were supplied with others, and, from the swerving of their horses, passed their fourth career without striking a blow. The fifth lance was too well employed, for they were both unhelmed, and then each rode to his own party.

Sir John Rousseau \*, an expert and valiant knight from England, but well known for his prowess in

---

\* He is called before Roussel. In the MS. in the British Museum, Roussel

various countries, ordered his squire to touch the shield of the lord de Saimpi, who was already armed and mounted. On receiving his lance, he spurred his horse against the English knight, and the shock of their spears against the targets instantly forced them to stop. Each returned to his post, and it was not long before they commenced their second course with equal vigour: but when near, the horses swerved, which prevented their stroke. To their sorrow, they were thus obliged to return again to the end of the lists. They were more successful the third course; for they struck each other with such force, that the vizors of their helmets were broken off: the knights continued their career, and the Englishman tilted no more that day.

Sir Peter Shirborne, a young knight, but of good courage, sent his squire to touch the warshield of sir Boucicaut. The knight was ready to answer him, for he was armed and on horseback leaning on his spear to wait for an adventure. Perceiving himself called upon, he raised his spear, and looked to see what his adversary was about, and, observing that he was handling his horse, did the same. When they began their course, they couched their spears, thinking to make sure blows; but they were disappointed, to their great vexation, by the swerving of their horses, which forced them to return to their posts. They determined to manage them better at their second tilt, and spurred them both so vigorously, they each struck

the other on the vizor. Sir Boucicaut broke his lance, but not so the English knight ; for he employed it with such force that he not only unhelmed, but made the blood spout from his nose as he bore off the helmet of sir Boucicaut, who then retired to his pavilion : he tilted no more that day, for it was now nearly vespers. Sir Peter Shirborne, however, would not desist, until he had completed his number of lances : he, in consequence, sent his squire to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was prepared to meet him. The two knights spurred on violently against each other, and hit on the top of their helmets ; but the lances flipt over, and they passed each other without hurt. The spectators said, had their spears been pointed lower, and the shields received the blows, one or both must have suffered severely from the shock. The next course they struck full on their targets, and broke their lances into three parts ; but the blow of the lord de Saimpi was so strong that the English knight lost his seat and fell on the ground, from whence, however, he instantly arose, and was led by his attendants from the lists.

The lord de Saimpi returned to his post, viewing the state of his adversary, and shewing his willingness to renew the tilt with him he had overthrown or with any other ; but none came forward, as it was now time to leave off for this day, and return to their hôtels. The English and such as had accompanied them, set off full gallop for Calais,

Calais, where they remained that night enjoying themselves, and talking over the feats of arms that had been performed.

The French retired to Saint Inglevere; and, if the English talked much of what had been done, you may readily suppose the French were not silent.

On Tuesday, after mass and drinking a cup, all those who intended to tilt, and those who wished to see them, left Calais, and rode in an orderly manner to where the lists had been held the preceding day. The French were already there, as was right, and prepared to receive them. The day was bright, clear, and sufficiently warm. The English drew up on one side, and armed those who were to tilt.

Sir William Clifton, a very valiant and expert knight, was the first who sent his squire to touch the shield of sir Boucicaut: the knight instantly came forth, armed completely for the tournament, mounted his horse, and grasped his lance. The two knights met full gallop, hitting each on the target, but passed on without any thing more. The second course was very handsome: they met, and hit each on the helmet, the lances crossing. The third course they struck again their shields, and with such violence that the horses were stopped. The fourth course with lances was gallantly performed, for they hit each other so strongly on the vizors of their helmets, they were driven off by the blow to different sides. The English knight

tilted no more that day, for he was told he had done enough.

After this, sir Nicholas Clinton, a young English knight, sent to touch the target of the lord de Saimpi, who immediately appeared ready armed and mounted. The two knights spurred their horses, bearing their spears in good array: when near, they struck their opponent's target with such violence that the steel remained fixed; and it is wonderful no other harm ensued, for they were both young, of good courage, and did not spare themselves. They neither fell nor were wounded, but their lances were shivered to pieces. They then passed on, each to his post. The second course was well tilted: they struck each on the helmets, but, as it was on the top, they did no damage, and passed on. At the third course with lances, the horses swerved, to their sorrow; and, at the fourth, the lord de Saimpi unhelmed the English knight, who returned to his countrymen, and tilted no more, for they assured him he had behaved most valiantly, and that he must allow others to have their share.

When sir Nicholas Clinton was returned from the lists, a gallant knight of England, nearly related to the earl of Huntingdon, called William Stamart, left his tent, and sent to touch the target of sir Reginald de Roye, who appeared to meet him. Each having taken his post, they vigorously spurred their horses, and gave such blows on their shields, that it was surprising they were not unhorsed;

horsed; but both kept their seats, as they rode well. They passed on to their places; but the English knight let fall his lance, and sir Reginald bore his in handsome array.

The English knight having had his lance given to him, he placed it in its rest, and spurring his horse, intended to have done wonders. Indeed the blow would have been good if it had been straight, but, by the swerving of his horse, it was very weak; and I doubt if it were not, in some measure, the fault of the knight. Sir Reginald struck him such a blow on the shield, as made him bend backward, but they passed on without further hurt. Being prepared for the third course, they again spurred their horses and couched their lances, and hit each other so rudely on the helmets that the fire sparkled from them. They passed on, but from this blow their lances fell to the ground; persons were at hand to pick them up and give them to the knights. Having replaced the lances in their rests, they renewed the tilt, and, aiming well, struck each other on the vizors of their helmets so severely, that sir William Stamart was unhelmed and nearly thrown to the ground, but, though he staggered, he kept his seat. The English knight then went to his countrymen, and did nothing more that day.

A squire called Lancaster now stepped forth, and sent to touch the shield of sir Boucicaut. He was ready mounted to answer the call, and, having grasped his spear, they met most courageously: they struck their helmets, so as to make the fire

By from them, and it was astonishing they kept them on their heads. No harm being done, each returned to his post, where they made no long stay before they began their second course with great vigour, each hitting on his opponent's target : the horses swerved, which prevented this from being a handsome or effectual tilt, but this they could not help. At the third lance they met, and the blow was so well placed, that the Englishman was unhelmed, and passed on to his post bare-headed all but the scull-cap, and would not that day tilt more.

A young knight, whose name was sir John Talboys, next made his appearance, completely armed, and sent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. That knight was ready for the tilt, and, having grasped his spear, stuck spurs into his horse : their first onset was so rough, their lances were shivered. The two knights passed each other without other damage, and were not long before they began their second course, having received new lances, of which there was a provision ready, all of the same length. From the fault of their horses, though they aimed well, they missed hitting ; but the third course was well performed, for they unhelmed each other, and then each retired to his own party, and the English knight did nothing more that day.

Sir Godfrey de Seca next presented himself : he was a gallant knight, and shewed, by his manner of riding and bearing his lance, that he was an able tilt, and desirous of renown. He sent his squire

squire to touch the war-target of sir Reginald de Roye. That knight came forward instantly, as he was ready mounted, and, placing himself properly for the tilt, they both set off full gallop, and gave such blows on their targets, that though their spears, from their strength, did not break, they remained fastened to the shields, and by dint of hard pushing, the horses were checked: each knight returned to his post without losing his lance, but bearing it handsomely before him. Having placed them in their rests they again spurred their horses, which were strong and active, but by their swerving they missed their stroke and dropped their spears. Those near picked them up and returned them, and again they renewed the tilt; for they were heated, and seemed unwilling to spare each other.

The English knight hit sir Reginald a very severe blow on the top of his helmet, without otherwise damaging him; but sir Reginald gave him so strong a thrust on the target, (for at that time he was counted one of the stoutest tilters in France, and was smitten with love for a young lady, that made all his affairs prosper) it pierced through it as well as his left arm: the spear broke as it entered, the butt end falling to the ground, the other sticking in the shield, and the steel in the arm. The knight, however, did not for this fail to finish his course gallantly; but his companions came to him, and the broken spear and steel were extracted, the blood staunched, and the arm tied up. Sir Reginald returned to his

friends, and there remained, leaning on another lance that had been given him. Sir Reginald was much praised by the French and English for this tilt; and no one said any thing improper against him, on account of the Englishman being wounded, for such are the events of arms: to one they are fortunate, to another the reverse; and, to say the truth, they did not spare each other.

An English squire, called Blaquet\*, then sent to strike the war-shield of the lord de Saimpi. When they were both ready, they spurred their horses, and hit on the helmets hard blows, though the points of their spears slipped off: on finishing their career they lost their lances. When they were restored to them, they began their second course, but, by the fault of their horses, nothing was done. At the third onset, Blaquet gave the lord de Saimpi a hard blow on the helmet, but was struck by him much harder on the vizor, and unhelmed, with a force that broke the buckle which fastened it behind, and it fell on the ground. They finished their course, and the English squire went among his countrymen, not intending to tilt more that day. The lord de Saimpi remained gallantly on horseback, leaning on his spear, to wait until he should be again called upon.

Sir John Bolcas, a gallant knight from England, shortly after this tilt was over, sent his squire to touch the shield of the lord de Saimpi, who, being prepared, entered the lists, his target on his neck

---

\* Blaquet. Q. Blake

and

and spear in hand. Each hit his adversary's shield, and it was surprising they were not pierced, for their lances were strong, and their heads well tempered; but they passed without further loss than of their spears, which fell to the ground. When they were picked up and given them, they again spurred their horses, and struck the helmets, but without effect, and continued their career. At the third course their horses crossed. The lord de Saimpi, at the fourth, unhelmed sir John Bolcas, by a hard blow, and then the two knights returned to their friends.

Thomelin Messidon \*, a young English knight, well and richly armed, with a great desire to gain honour, sent to touch the shield of sir Boucicaut. The knight instantly came forth, and, having grasped his lance, both spurred their horses; and each made his stroke by crossing under the helmet: they passed on without hurt or blame, but were not long before they spurred on again. In this course, they hit very roughly on the targets; Thomelin Messidon shivered his lance; but sir Boucicaut's blow was so severe, it drove his opponent over the crupper of his horse to the ground. Those of his party ran to raise him up, and carried him off, for he tilted no more that day.

Another squire of England called Navarton, instantly stepped forth, and sent to touch the war-shield of sir Boucicaut, saying he would revenge

---

\* Thomelin Messidon. It is Messiden in the MSS.

his companion, whom he had struck to the ground in his presence. Boucicaut was ready to answer him, being armed and mounted, and leaning on his spear. They met full gallop, and hit each other on the vizors of their helmets, but passed on without other damage. Having had their helmets re-adjusted, and their lances given them, they again met with great violence, and from the shock of the blows on their targets the horses were stopped, and the lances broken into three pieces, but they completed their course without any hurt. They had new spears given them ; and at the third course sir Boucicaut was hit hard on the target, but he gave Navarton a blow that un-helmeted him : he then withdrew to his country-men, and tilted no more that day ; for they said he had done sufficient, and had gained great applause.

After this, another squire advanced, called Sequaqueton \*, an able man at arms and expert tilter. He sent to touch the shield of sir Reginald de Roye, who replied, that he was prepared and mounted. They spurred their horses, and gave violent strokes on their targets, without sparing each other. Sequaqueton bore himself handsomely without falling, to the surprise of the spectators, for sir Reginald's blow made him bend backward almost on the crupper of his horse ; but he raised himself, and gallantly finished his career with the loss only of his lance. Having received another, they ran

---

\* Sequaqueton. Q. Swinnerton.

the second tilt with great courage, and struck such blows on their helmets as made the fire fly from them. It was a handsome course, and no damage done. They repaired to their posts, and spurred again for the third time. In this tilt, Sequaqueton was severely unhelmed, and on the point of falling, both himself and horse, for he staggered considerably. The squire, when on his feet, returned to his companions and tilted no more: indeed, there was an end to the whole for the day, as it was now late. The English collected together, and returned to Calais, as did the French to Saint Inglevere.

You must know, though I have not before made mention of it, that king Charles of France was present at these justs. Being young, and desirous of witnessing extraordinary fights, he would have been much vexed if he had not seen these tournaments. He was therefore present at the early part and latter end of them, attended only by the lord de Garencieres; but both so disguised that nobody knew of it; and they returned every evening to Marquise\*.

The ensuing day, Wednesday, was as fine as the foregoing; and the English, who had crossed the sea to take part in or view this tournament, mounted their horses, at the same hour as on the preceding day, and rode to the place appointed for the lists, to the delight of the French, who

---

\* Marquise,—a town in Picardy, five leagues from Calais, three and 1-half from Boulogne.

were rejoiced to see them. It was not long after their arrival when an English squire, a good tilter, called John Savage, squire of honour and of the body to the earl of Huntingdon, sent to touch the shield of sir Reginald de Roye. The knight answered, he was ready and willing to satisfy him.

When he had mounted his horse, and had his helmet buckled and lance given to him, they set off full gallop, and gave such blows on the targets, that had the spears not broken, one or both must have fallen to the ground. This course was handsome and dangerous ; but the knights received no hurt, though the points of the lances passed through the targets, and slipped off their side armour. The spears were broken about a foot from the shaft, the points remaining in the shields ; and they gallantly bore the shafts before them, as they finished their career. The spectators thought they must have been seriously wounded ; and the French and English hastened each to their companion, whom, to their joy, they found unhurt. They were told they had done enough for that day ; but John Savage was not satisfied, and said he had not crossed the sea for only one tilt with a lance. This was reported to sir Reginald, who replied,—‘ He is in the right ; and it is but just that he should be gratified, either by me or by one of my companions.’

When they had rested themselves a while, and received new lances, they began their second course, each aiming well at the other ; but they failed, from the swerving of their horses, to their great

great vexation, and returned to their posts. Their lances, which they had accidentally dropped, were given to them, and they set off on their third course. This time they hit on the vizors of their helmets ; and, by the force and crossing of their lances, both were unhelmed as they passed. The tilt was much applauded for its correctness and vigour. When they were returned to their posts, the English told John Savage, that he had very honourably performed, and that it was now time for him to make way for others to tilt as well as himself. He complied with this, and, laying aside his lance and target, dismounted, and rode on a hackney to witness the performances of others.

An English squire, named William Basquenay, cousin to the earl marshal, came forth fully armed for the occasion, and sent to have the war-shield of sir Boucicaut stricken. The knight instantly made his appearance at the end of the lists, and each galloped towards the other as straight as they could. They struck their helmets gallantly ; and the blow was so effectual on the vizors that they were both unhelmed, and continued their course without further hurt. Their friends who were near re-adjusted their armours ; and, giving them their spears, they commenced their second course by desperate strokes on their targets ; but, the lances breaking, no harm was done, and they continued their career. They were supplied with new lances, that were stout and good ; but, from the fault of their horses, they missed their strokes. At the fourth lance, they hit ; and William Basquenay

nay was unhelmed a second time, and then returned to his companions, not tilting more that day.

A squire from England, whose name was John Scot, fent to have the war-shield of the lord de Saimpi touched. He immediately appeared, and at their onset they gave such blows on their targets as stopped their horses ; but, their lances being strong, they neither broke nor fell out of their hands. The second course was well performed : the lord de Saimpi hit his adversary ; but Scot had more success in unhelming him, for which he was much applauded by his countrymen.

The lord de Saimpi was soon re-helmed ; and, grasping his spear, they spurred against each other with great violence. They placed their blows on their targets, but with a force that drove John Scot out of his saddle to the ground, and thus did the lord de Saimpi revenge himself. The squire was raised, and carried off by his companions.

Bernard Stapleton, an English squire, fent to strike the lord de Saimpi's shield, who was not dismounted from his last tilt. They met, and hit each other on the helmets so forcibly as to make the sparks fly from them ; but they passed on without hurt and returned to their posts. Still grasping their spears, they couched them, and at this seconde course struck very severe blows on thier targets, but kept their seats well, without falling or staggering, to the end of their career. The third lance struck the helmets, and both were unhelmed. The English squire returned from

from the lists, as his friends told him he had acquitted himself with honour.

The next that prefented himself was a young gay knight from England, who shone in tournaments, in dancing, and in singing, called sir John Arundel. He sent his squire to touch the war-shield of sir Reginald de Roye. The knight replied, that he wished for nothing more agreeable than to tilt with him. Having received their spears, they galloped off at the same moment, and gave and received hard blows on their shields; but they kept their seats handsomely, and continued their career. Their lances having fallen from their hands, were restored to them by those appointed for that purpose; and they began their second course with blows on the helmets that made the fire fly, but they passed on without further hurt. At the third onset, the horses swerved; and the knights, in their attempt to strike, lost their lances, and with difficulty recovered themselves. At the fourth, they struck the helmets, but without harm or unhelming. At the fifth course, they hit each other on the targets, and broke their lances, without any other damage. Sir John Arundel completed his career, and returned to his friends.

After this, Nicholas Stone, an English squire, sent to touch the war-shield of sir Boucicaut. The knight seizing his lance, they spurred against each other and hit on the helmets; but the spears slipped off, and they passed unhurt. Holding still

their

their lances in the rests, they set off again, and hit so hard on the targets, that the horses staggered with the shock, and the knights dropped their spears. When they had received their lances, they again galloped off full speed, and their blows on the helmets were effectual: at least the English squire lost his helmet and retired, for his friends said he had done enough.

Another squire from England, called John Marshal, advanced to the lists, completely armed, and sent to touch the war-target of sir Boucicaut, who replied, he was ready, and waiting to be called upon. At their first course they hit each other on the targets, but the lances fell to the ground, and they returned to their stations without other damage. On their being restored, they continued their tilt, and struck hard blows on the helmets without any thing more, and pursued their career, bearing their lances handsomely before them. When they had rested a little, they considered how they could best annoy each other, and, having aimed well, spurred on their horses. John Marshal gave such a thrust on Boucicaut's shield, that his lance was broken to the stump, and Boucicaut's blow unhelmed his opponent, and drove him on the crupper of his horse. The squire, notwithstanding, completed his course without falling, and then went to his companions, who said he ought now to be satisfied, for that he had well performed.

When the squire had withdrawn, a young and frisky

frisky English knight advanced, who was eager to gain renown. His name was sir John Clifeton\*, and he bore for arms a field argent, fretted azure, with a mullet argent in chief. He sent his squire to touch the war-shield of sir Reginald de Roye, who was much pleased at the summons. Having taken their stations and received their lances, they spurred their horses and hit each other full on the helmets, but passed and completed their career. They kept their lances in the rests, and were not long before they commenced the second course, in which they gave heavy thrusts on their shields, but without any loss, except of their spears, which fell to the ground. Having received their lances, they hit each other, on the third course, such blows on the tops of the helmets as made the fire fly. At the fourth course their horses swerved, to their great disappointment. The fifth was well performed, for each broke his lance. The two knights grew warm, and plainly shewed they were desirous of trying each other's valour to the utmost. When at their stations they had fresh lances given them, that were stiff enough; and, after a short delay, they again spurred their horses, and laid in such blows on the helmets that both were unhelmed. This course was greatly praised by all present, and when they had completed their career, they returned to their countrymen; for the English knight tilted no more that day.

When this was finished, a squire from England,

---

\* Sir John Clifeton. Q. Clifton.

called Roger Leau \*, whose arms were a crois gules, on a field argent and sable quartered, came forward, handsomely equipped, and gaily sent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi. The knight instantly obeyed the call, and by his alacrity shewed he preferred tilting to remaining idle. On the first onset, they checked their horses, by the force of their blows on their shields; but the lances, being strong, did not break, and they continued their course. On the second tilt, they hit the helmets hard enough; but, as the points of their lances grazed off, no harm was done. Roger Leau was unhelmed at the third course, and returned to his countrymen without doing more that day.

After this a gallant knight, from that part of Hainault called Ostrevant, a good man at arms and able tilter, offered himself. He had been educated in England at the court of king Edward, and his name was sir John d'Ambreticourt, and brother to that excellent knight, sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt. He bore for his arms ermine two bars humetty gules, each charged with three escallop shells argent.

The knight was well equipped for the tourney, and sent one of his squires to touch the war-target of sir Reginald de Roye. Having taken their stations, they eyed each other well, and, spurring their horses, gave such blows on the shields as made sparks of fire fly from them, and

---

\* Roger Leau. Q. Low.

the horses to bend under them. The tilt was handsome, for no harm was done, and they continued the career. They were not long before they ran their second course, and again hit on the shields. It was wonderful that this was not attended with mischief, for they were both strong and courageous tilters, fearless of death or danger. The shock of this attack was so great that their horses were forced on their haunches, and the two knights staggered. Nevertheless they continued their career, but with the loss of their lances.

Having received their lances, they ran their third course, and sir John d'Ambreticourt unhelmed sir Reginald de Roye so as to injure him very considerably, and to terminate his career. Sir Reginald went to his party, and plainly shewed he would not tilt more that day. When sir John d'Ambreticourt perceived this, as he had a great delight in tilting, he sent to touch the war-shield of sir Boucicaut, who instantly advanced to the lists. Having had his target buckled on, and placed his spear in the rest, they spurred against each other, and gave such blows on the shield that it was surprising they were not pierced through; but this might be owing to the swerving of the horses.

When returned to their stations, they did not remain long before they commenced their second course with vigour, and hit each other hard on the helmets; but the spears slipped off, and they continued their career. The knights having lost their spears, they were brought to them by their squires,

and they renewed the tilt. This time they were both very severely unhelmed, and gallantly finished their course.

The English now collected together, as evening was approaching, and returned to Calais, where they passed the night in talking over the different feats of arms that had been that day performed. The French amused themselves in like manner at Saint Inglevere. On Thursday morning, the fourth day of the tournament, the English found that there were yet many knights and squires who had not entered the lists, and who had purposely come from England: they therefore said, that all who had any intentions to tilt should do so, otherwise they would not be handsomely treated. The lords of England had agreed to return to Saint Inglevere on the Thursday, for those who pleased to perform their justs: in consequence, they left Calais after mass, and, on arriving at the lists, found the three French knights ready in their pavilions to answer all who might call on them, attended by those that were to serve them, and such as came to witness the deeds of arms.

An English knight, called sir Godfrey d'Estas \*, was the first who entered the lists: he bore for arms a lion fable on a field or, with three bars gules, and charged with a mullet or, on the dexter paw of a lion, and was completely and gaily armed. He sent a squire to touch the war-shield of

---

\* Sir Godfrey d'Estas. Q. Eustace.

Sir Boucicaut, who instantly advanced from his pavilion prepared to obey the summons.

Having received their spears and bucklers, and eyed each other for a short time, they spurred on their horses, and both struck violent blows on the helmets; but, as the points of the lances slipped off, they continued their course to their stations. Keeping the lances in the rests, they recommenced the tilt, and met with such force on their bucklers, that had not their spears broken, much mischief might have ensued. When they had rested a while and had new lances, they ran a third course with great violence, and hit the vizors so fairly and well, that both were unhelped; they continued their career, and then retired to their own people. The English knight did nothing more this day, for he was told that he had performed well, and must give way to others.

Alain Bourch\*, an able and expert English squire, sent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who came from his pavilion in obedience to the call. They gave blows on their helmets, at the first onset, that made the fire sparkle, but no other harm was done. At the second tilt, their lances met on their bucklers with such force as shivered them in pieces, but they continued their career unhurt. They were quickly supplied with new lances; and, spurring on the third time, they placed their thrusts so well and strong that they

---

\* Alain Bourch. Q. Birch. Lord Berners calls him Alayne Borowe.

were both unhelmed, and completed their course; the Englishman retired to his countrymen, to allow others to shew their skill and valour.

An English squire, called John Storp \*, sent to touch the target of sir Boucicaut, who issued forth out of his pavilion, and, his horse being ready, mounted him, and entered the lists. They failed in their first course, from the fault of their horses. When returned to their stations, they were not long before they ran the second; and, although they gave each other severe blows on the helmet, no mischief ensued. At the third course, John Scrope was forcibly struck to the ground; whence he was raised by his friends, and did no more that day.

A Bohemian knight now advanced, who was of the household of the queen of England, called sir Herchause. He was esteemed a strong and expert tilter, and bore for his arms three griffin's feet sable on a shield argent onglé with azure.

When he entered the lists, he was asked which of the three knights he wished to tilt with: he replied, 'With Boucicaut.' On this, an English squire was sent, according to the regulations, to touch sir Boucicaut's war-target. The knight, having kept himself prepared for any summons, left his pavilion, and, having fastened his buckler and clasped his lance, entered the lists. His opponent was then ready to meet him; and, spurring their horses, they thought to give full strokes;

---

\* John Storp. Lord Berners—Scrope.

but

but it was not so, from the ill conduct of the Bohemian knight, for which he was greatly blamed. He had, out of the line of tilting, hit sir Boucicaut on the helmet, and continued his career: for this impropriety, of which the English saw him guilty, he had forfeited his arms and horse, should the French insist upon them. The French and English held a long conversation on this ill-placed stroke; but at last the French knights pardoned it, the better to please the English.

Herchause begged as a favour that he might be permitted to run only one course more. On being asked, ‘With which of the three knights?’ he sent to touch the target of sir Reginald de Roye. That knight was waiting in his pavilion, not having tilted that day, and declared his willingness to accommodate sir Herchause, since his request had been granted.

Sir Reginald mounted his horse, and having had his buckler fastened, and his lance given him, he eyed his opponent, that he might well point his stroke. Both spurred their horses at the same moment, and hit on the shields; but sir Reginald (who was one of the firmest and best tilters in France) thrust with such force as made the Bohemian fly out of his saddle, and fall so severely on the ground that the spectators imagined he was killed. Sir Reginald continued his course to his own station.

Sir Herchause was raised with much difficulty by his attendants, and carried to the English, who were well pleased at what had happened to him,

for the uncourteous manner in which he had run his first course. He had not any desire to tilt more that day,

The next who came forward was Robin Scorneborne\*, an able and gay squire from England. He sent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was ready mounted and prepared to answer him. At their first course they hit their helmets, and continued their career. At the next, they struck their bucklers, but unsuccessfully, as before, excepting the loss of their lances. Having received them again, they, on the third onset, placed their thrusts so ably and forcibly on the vizors, that both were unhelmed, and finished their course. The English squire returned to his companions, and was idle during the rest of the day.

Another English squire, called John Merlan, now advanced. He bore for arms a bend sable on a field argent, charged with three lion-heads sable, and sent to touch the war-target of sir Reginald de Roye. The knight answered, he was at his service. Having entered the lists, they at the first onset gave violent blows on the helmets, but without any effect, and, by firmly holding their lances, returned to their stations without loss of any kind. The second course, their spears met on their bucklers, and the horses were checked; having thrown down their lances, they continued their career, each to his station, and made ready to tilt well the

---

\* Robin Scorneborne. Q. Sherburn, or Shirburn.

third lance. When their spears had been given them, they set off full gallop, and sir Reginald hit John Merlan a blow on his buckler, which forced him out of the saddle to the ground. He continued his course to his station, and the Englishman was raised and carried to his countrymen.

John Mouton, another squire from England, next offered himself. He bore for arms a chevron sable on a field gules, three pierced mullets or, with an indented bordure sable, and sent to strike the war-shield of sir Boucicaut, who replied, he was always ready to tilt. Their first strokes met on their bucklers, but without damage. It was not their fault, for the blows were well placed, and they gallantly passed, bearing their lances before them, to their stations. They were not long before they commenced their second tilt, and hit very severely on the helmets, but without loss, excepting their lances, and returned to their posts. Those who were appointed to gather the lances that fell, instantly presented them to the knights, who renewed the tilt ; but at this third course sir Boucicaut unhelmed John Mouton, who retired to his companions.

A very handsome knight from England now came forth : he was well armed at all points, and kept an excellent position on his horse, and was called sir Jaquemin Strop. He sent to touch the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who, being mounted and armed before his pavilion, advanced

---

\* Sir Jaquemin Strop. Q. Sir James Scrope.

to the lists. At their first course, they missed their stroke, from their horses running out of the line, which vexed them much. They were not long before they again set off, full gallop, and, when they met, gave such blows on the helmets as made them strike fire: they passed on without loss but of their spears. As soon as they were returned to their stations, their lances were brought them, and after a short delay, they began their third course. They both hit with great force on the bucklers; but sir James Scrope's lance broke, while sir Reginald unhorsed his opponent and continued his career. Sir James was raised from the ground by his attendants, and did no more that day.

Another English knight, called sir William Maserelle, was ready to enter the lists, and to engage with whoever pleased; for he had crossed the sea with the earl of Huntingdon in this view. He sent to touch the war-target of sir Boucicaut, who had his buckler fastened, and instantly advanced to meet his adversary. They both at the same moment spurred their horses, which were fresh and eager to begin the course; for, the very instant they felt the points, they bounded forward. The two knights took good aim, and mutually gave such strokes on their helmets that fire sparkled from them; and, though the points of the lances slipped off, the tilt was much praised by all present. They continued their career to their different stations, but did not make any long stay before they again spurred their horses and couched their spears, for they did not drop them, and met with such violence,

lence, that their lances must have pierced the bucklers, if the horses had not swerved. They finished their course, throwing down their lances, and completed their career like good tilters, in excellent array to their posts. Having received their spears, they set off as fast as their horses could carry them, and, on their meeting, hit the vizors of the helmets severely. The tilt was loudly applauded, for they were both unhelmed, and bare-headed all but the scull-caps: they finished their career, and then returned to their friends, for they had excellently performed.

An English squire, called Nicholas Leau\*, well and elegantly armed, advanced, having a great desire to try his skill in arms. He sent to strike the war-target of the lord de Saimpi, who was already mounted and armed, in front of his pavilion, with his buckler on his breast, blazoned with his arms. He grasped his spear, and flew to the lists with the eagerness of a hawk to seize his prey. The English squire did the same, and, setting off at full speed, they gave such blows on their bucklers, that their lances were shivered: it was fortunate they broke, or the knights must have been greatly hurt, or unhorsed, but they kept their seats firmly. When returned to their stations, they were supplied with new lances, and with them, at the second course, made the fire fly from their helmets: no other damage was done, for the spears had crossed, and they continued their career to their

---

\* Nicholas Leau, Q. Low.

posts.

posts. After a short rest, they commenced their third tilt, and had well examined where they could best place their thrusts. This was gallantly performed; for they hit, justly, the upper parts of the helmets, and the points of the lances entered: both were so neatly unhelmed, that the lacings burst, and the helmets flew over the cruppers of their horses on the field. The knights kept their seats and completed their course in handsome array, and then returned to their countrymen.

The tournament was now at an end, for no more tilters appeared on the part of the English. The earl of Huntingdon, the earl-marshall, the lord Clifford, the lord Beaumont\*, sir John Clifton, sir John d'Ambreticourt, sir Peter Sherburne, and all those knights who had tilted the preceding days, then waited in a body on the French knights, and thanked them warmly for the amusements they had given them. They said—‘ All the knights who have accompanied us having now tilted, we take our leave of you, and return to Calais on our way to England. We know well that whoever may wish to try their skill in arms will find you here for thirty days, according to your proclamation. On our return to England, we shall loudly speak of your gallantry, and tell all those who may inquire of these deeds of arms to come and witness them in person.’

‘ Many thanks,’ replied the three knights:

---

\* Lord Beaumont. Dugdale says his name was John, instead of Henry, as Froissart calls him.

‘they

‘ they shall be made welcome, and delivered by deeds of arms as you have been; and we desire you will accept our best acknowledgments for the courtesy you have shewn us.’

In such friendly manner did the English and French knights separate, in the plain of St. Inglevere: the first took the road to Calais, but made no long stay; for on the Saturday morning they embarked on board passage-boats, and landed at Dover about mid-day, when each retired to his inn. They staid the whole of Saturday, and Sunday until after mass, at Dover; where having refreshed themselves and their horses, they continued their journey to Rochester, and there lay that night: on the morrow, they arrived at London, when they separated, and each returned to his home.

The three French knights before named kept their engagements valiantly at St. Inglevere. When the English knights were gone, the king of France and the lord de Garencieres, who had witnessed the tournament in disguise, returned to their inn at Marquise; and on the morrow, at break of day, they set out for Paris, and never ceased riding until they came to Creil\* on the river Oise, where at that time the queen of France resided. Scarcely any one knew that the king was present at these tilts but his confidential valets de chambre.

From the time the English left Calais, I never heard that any others came from England to St.

---

\* Creil,—diocese of Senlis, ten leagues and a half from Paris.

Inglevere to try their skill in arms. The three knights, however, remained there until the thirty days were fully accomplished, and then leisurely returned each to his home. When they waited on the king of France, the duke of Touraine and other lords at Paris, they were most handsomely received. Indeed, they were intitled to such reception, for they had gallantly behaved themselves, and well supported the honour of the king and of the realm of France.

---

## CHAP. XII.

THE DUKE OF BOURBON IS APPOINTED CHIEF OF AN EXPEDITION TO AFRICA, THAT IS UNDERTAKEN BY SEVERAL KNIGHTS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND AT THE SOLICITATION OF THE GENOESE.

I HAVE delayed for a long time speaking of a grand and noble enterprise that was undertaken by some knights of France, England and other countries, against the kingdom of Barbary. I wish not to forget nor to defer it; but, as I had begun on the tilts at St. Inglevere, I was desirous to complete that account. Since that is done, I will return to other subjects, and refresh my memory accordingly; for such events as I have to relate are greatly amusing, and, if I had not taken pleasure

pleasure in inditing them, I should never have succeeded. The text of the subject I mean to proceed on says, that about this time the Genoese were reported throughout France and other countries to be desirous of raising a large army to invade Barbary; and that all knights, squires or men at arms, who would engage in this expedition, should be supplied from Genoa with such purvances as biscuit, fresh water, vinegar, and vessels and galleys to transport them thither.

The cause of their forming this armament was, that the Africans had attacked the country of Genoa, plundering the islands belonging to them, and carrying off such from the coasts of Genoa as were not on their guard, by which they were kept under continual alarms. They possessed also a town, situated on the sea-shore of Barbary, which is beyond measure strong, and called Africa\*, surrounded with high walls, gates and deep ditches. Like as the strong town of Calais is the key of France and Flanders, and whoever is master of it may at all times enter those countries, and from thence may be sent a powerful force by sea, to do mischief to their neighbours, just so is the town of Africa, the strong hold of the inhabitants of Barbary, Bugia and Tunis, and other infidel countries. The Genoese, who are rich merchants, bore great hatred to this town; for its

---

\* Africa, a sea-port town of Barbary, seventy miles distant from Tunis. It was razed to the ground by Andrew Doria, by the command of the emperor Charles V. and has never been rebuilt.

corsairs frequently watched them at sea, and when strongest, fell on and plundered their ships, carrying their spoils to this town of Africa, which was, and is now, their place of deposit, and may be called their warren.

The Genoese, to put an end to such conduct, and to satisfy the complaints of their subjects, that were daily made to them from the island of Albe\*, Sire†, Guerse‡, Bostan§, Gorgennen||, and from the coast as far as the gulph of Lyons to the islands of Sardonne¶, Finefée\*\*+, and even from the island of Majorca††, determined to make their situation known to the court of France, and to offer to such knights as would undertake an expedition against these infidels, vessels and provision, with a passage thither and back free of all costs, provided that one of the king's uncles, or his brother the duke of Touraine (who, being young, ought to labour to gain renown) would take the chief command. They likewise offered the aid of pilgrims, from foreign parts to assist them, twelve thousand select Genoese cross-bows, and eight thousand infantry armed with spears and shields, all at their expense. They imagined,

---

\* Albe. Q. Elba.

† Sire. Q. Cyprus.

‡ Guerse. Q. Corsica.

§ Bostan. Q.

|| Gorgennen. Q. Gorgona.

¶ Sardonne. Q. Sardinia.

\*\* Finefée. Q.

†† Majorca, &c. belonged to the king of Arragon.

that

that as now there was a truce between France, England and their allies, their knights would, from having nothing to do, be glad to join in this warfare, and that they should have numbers of them from those kingdoms.

When this intelligence was first brought to the French knights and squires, they were much rejoiced, in hope of gaining honour; and the ambassadors from Genoa were told they should not return without their business being attended to, and succour afforded them, for their anxiety to extend the Christian faith was very praise-worthy. They waited at Paris, while it was under deliberation of the council who should be appointed commander in chief. The duke of Touraine offered his services to the king and council; but they, as well as the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, remonstrated, that this command was not fit for him. They considered, that as the Genoese insisted on the king's brother, or one of his uncles, taking the command, the duke of Bourbon would be the most proper person, and that he should have for his second the lord de Coucy.

The Genoese ambassadors, having received a favourable answer from the king, and certain assurances of being assisted with knights and men at arms from France, under the command of the duke of Bourbon, in the course of the year, were greatly contented. They took leave of the king, and returned to their own country, to relate the good news, and make preparations accordingly.

Reports of an invasion of Barbary were soon spread throughout France: to some knights and squires it was agreeable; to others the contrary: all who were desirous of going thither could not, as it would have been at their own charges, for no lord paid for any but those of his own household. It was also ordered, that no one from France should make part of this expedition but such as had the king's leave; for the council wished not the realm to be void of defence, and the Genoese were expressly bound not to suffer any servants to embark, but solely such as were gentlemen, and men who could be depended upon. It was, besides, meant as a compliment to the knights and squires of other nations who might wish to join in the enterprise. This regulation gave pleasure to all foreign knights who heard of it.

The duke of Bourbon, having accepted the command, sent his servants to Genoa, where they were to embark, to make the necessary preparations for him and his household. The gallant count d'Auvergne, who was likewise of the expedition, did the same. The lord de Coucy, sir Guy de la Trimouille, sir John de Vienne, and all the great barons and knights of France who had obtained leave to make part of this army, were not behind hand in sending thither purveyances suitable to their state. The lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, sir Philip de Bar, the lord de Harcourt, sir Henry d'Antoing, did so likewise. From Brittany and Normandy many great lords made preparations for this expedition to Barbary,

as

as well as from Hainault: among the last were the lord de Linge\* and the lord de Havreth. Several knights came from Flanders; and the duke of Lancaster had a bastard-son, called Henry de Beaufort, whom, through devotion, he sent thither. He had him well accompanied by many knights and squires of rank in England.

The count de Foix was unwilling his bastard-son, Evan of Foix, should remain behind, and had him properly attended by knights and squires, as he wished him to keep his state grandly. Every one had taken care to send before hand all he should want; and those at the greatest distance from Genoa, left their countries the middle of May, but it was about a month before all were assembled.

The Genoese were well pleased on their arrival, and made handsome and rich presents to the chiefs, the better to secure their affections. As the knights arrived, they were posted adjoining each other, and on being mustered by the marshals, amounted to fourteen hundred knights and squires. They were embarked on board of ships and galleys, that had been properly equipped for the voyage, on Saint John Baptist's day, in the year of grace 1390.

It was a beautiful sight to view this fleet, with the emblazoned banners of the different lords glittering in the sun and fluttering in the wind; and to hear the minstrels and other musicians

---

\* Lord de Linge. MSS. Ligne.

sounding their pipes, clarions and trumpets, whose sounds were re-echoed back by the sea. When all were embarked, they cast anchor, and remained that night at the mouth of the harbour; but the servants and horses were left behind on shore. A horse worth fifty francs was on their embarkation sold for ten, as many of the knights and squires were uncertain when, or if ever they should return, and the keep of five horses at Genoa was upwards of a franc a day: they therefore, on departing, made of them what money they could, but it was little enough.

There were about three hundred galleys to transport the men at arms and archers, and upwards of one hundred vessels for the purveyances and other necessaries. On the morrow, at day-break, they weighed anchor, and rowed coastwise that and the succeeding night. The third day, they made Porto-fino, where they lay that night: at sun-rise, they rowed to Porto-Venere, and again cast anchor. The ensuing morning they weighed and took to the deep, putting themselves under the protection of God and St. George.

When they had passed the island of Elba, they encountered a violent tempest, which drove them back by Gorgona, Sardinia and Corsica, into the gulph of Lyons, a position always dangerous; but they could not avoid it, for the tempest was so violent, that the ablest mariner could not do anything to prevent their running the utmost risk of destruction: they waited therefore the will of God.

This

This storm lasted a day and night, and dispersed the fleet.

When the weather became calm and the sea tranquil, the pilots who were acquainted with those seas steered as directly as they could for the island of Commeres\*, which is but thirty miles from the town of Africa, whither they bent their course. The masters of the vessels had held a council before they entered the gulph of Lyons, and determined, that should they part company, they would rendezvous at the island of Commeres, and wait there until they were all assembled. This plan was adopted; and it was upwards of nine days before all were collected, so much had they been scattered.

The island of Commeres, though not large, is very pleasant. The lords there refreshed themselves, and praised God for having all met again without essential loss or damage. When on the eve of departure, the French lords, who took the lead, held a council on their future proceedings, as they were now so near the port of Africa.

We will for a while leave this expedition, and speak of events that happened in France, more particularly in Auvergne.

---

\* Commeres. This island is called Conimbres and Comieres, in the printed and MS. editions. I suppose it must mean Comino or Cumin, Cuminum, and formerly Hephestia, a small island in the Mediterranean, between Gozzo and Malta, belonging to the knights of Malta.—BAUDRAN.

## CHAP. XIII.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL, CAPTAIN OF THE PILLAGING COMPANIES, HAVING FORTIFIED LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, ON THE BORDERS OF LIMOUSIN AND AUVERGNE, IS BESIEGED BY THE VISCOUNT DE MAUX, BY COMMAND OF THE KING OF FRANCE.

DURING the time of the assembly of this body of men at arms in France, for the expedition to extend the Christian faith, and gain renown, there were another sort of men at arms wholly given up to plunder in Limousin, Auvergne and Rouergue, who, in spite of the truce, were continually doing mischief to these countries, which thought themselves in security. The king of France had caused the truce to be publicly notified to the captains of the freebooters, particularly to Perrot le Béarnois, governor of Chaluçet, Aymérigot Marcel, Olim Barbe, captain of Donzac in Auvergne, who were personally named in the act, and were assured, that if the truce were in the smallest degree infringed, these guilty of it should be corporally punished, without hope of mercy. This was done, that there might not be any excuses made from ignorance of the treaty.

Some of the captains, fearful of a disgraceful death, or of incurring the king's indignation, kept the peace very well. Others did not, for which they paid severely, as you will hear in the continuation of this history.

You —

You have before found it related in the course of these chronicles, indited and arranged by me, sir John Froissart, treasurer and canon of Chimay, how peace had been agreed on with many of the captains of castles in Auvergne, Limousin, Rouergue and Cahorsin, by the mediation of John count d'Armagnac, and Berald dauphin of Auvergne, to whom they had surrendered their castles for different sums of money. The captains were also, by these treaties, bound to renounce, during the truce, the continuance of the warfare in France, and to accompany the count d'Armagnac to Lombardy or whither else he might lead them.

He was desirous to employ them in a war he was meditating against the lord Galeas de Visconti, count de Vertus, for having disinherited his cousins german, the sons of his late uncle the lord Barnabo, as has been before mentioned.

The count d'Armagnac and the dauphin of Auvergne had laboured hard to gain over these captains, that the country might be at peace; and for this end a large sum had been raised in Auvergne, Gevaudan, Rouergue, Cahorsin and Limousin, to the amount of two hundred thousand francs. This tax pressed so hard on rich and poor, that many were forced to sell their inheritance to obtain peace. They imagined, that having paid such sums, they should remain unmolested by these robbers; but it was not so in many places, more especially in those parts where Aymerigot Marcel had his garrison. Not

withstanding the fact that he had surrendered, by capitulation, his castle of Aloise, which is situated in the heart of Auvergne, to the count d'Armagnac, he continued to do much mischief to the inhabitants. Aymerigot was so rich as to be able to pay down, if necessary, for his ransom, one hundred thousand francs, which he had gained by plunder during ten years that he had carried on this trade.

The count d'Armagnac was anxious to have Aymerigot among his followers to Lombardy, for two reasons: one was, to have his advice, as in every thing relative to war he was subtle and enterprising, and very able respecting the scalado of forts, and the mode of war to be carried on: he therefore caused him to be told how desirous he was of his company, and that he would be a great gainer if he would join him. The other reason of his wish was, that if Aymerigot should remain behind, although he had sold Aloise, he might still do great harm to that country.

Aymerigot dissembled in his negotiations with the count, and said to those sent to him,— ‘When I shall witness the departure of the count d'Armagnac of Lombardy, and see for certain that he is in earnest, I do not think, from the inclination I feel towards him, that I shall remain behind.’ This was the only answer that could be obtained from him.

The count d'Armagnac resided in Comminges and in the Touloufain, making his preparations, and collecting men at arms. He would have hastened

hastened his expedition, if that to Africa had not interfered; but that delayed it for some little time, for many knights and squires, who were gone thither, had promised him their assistance, as soon as he should begin his march. The suddenness of the invasion of Barbary deranged his plans, and likewise induced the more speedy capitulations with the captains of the free companies.

Aymerigot Marcel was much vexed that he had sold his castle of Aloise, near St. Flour \*, for his importance was lost, and he was less feared. During the time he held it against the whole force of the country, he was dreaded and respected by his companions in arms. He kept it always in good repair and well provisioned; for his compositions with the country round amounted to twenty thousand florins yearly. He was quite melancholy, when he thought of his reduced state, and would not diminish his treasure, which he had gained by his robberies, now the means of increasing it were closed. He said to himself, that he heartily repented what he had done, because in his opinion the pillaging life he had led, taking all things into consideration, was not to be despised. At times, he conversed on this subject with his former companions, and said,—‘There is no pleasure nor glory in this world like what men at arms, such as ourselves, enjoyed. How

---

\* Saint Flour,—a town in Auvergne, 22 leagues from Clermont-ferrand, 25 from Riom.

happy were we, when riding out in search of adventures, we met a rich abbot, a merchant, or a string of mules, well laden with draperies, furs or spices, from Montpellier, Beziers, or other places. All was our own, or at least ransomed according to our will. Every day we gained money. The peasants of Auvergne and Limousin loved us, and provided our castle with corn, meal, baked bread, litter for our horses, oats, hay, good wine, fat beeves, sheep and all sorts of poultry: we lived like kings; and when we went abroad, the country trembled: every thing was ours, both in going and returning. How did I and the bourg Copane take Carlat? and how did I and Perrot le Béarnois win Chaluçet? How did we, you and I, without other assistance, scale the strong castle of Marquel, that belongs to the count-dauphin? I only kept it five days, and was paid down on a table, five thousand francs for it, of which I gave back one thousand, from love to the count's children. By my troth, this was a profitable and pleasant life, and I feel myself much reduced by selling Aloise, which was strong enough to resist any force that could be brought against it; and was beside, at the time of my surrendering, so plentifully stored with provision and other necessaries, that it would not have needed any thing for seven years to come. I consider myself, therefore, as deceived by this count d'Armagnac: indeed, Olim Barbe and Perrot le Béarnois forewarned me that I should repent when too late, and

I now

I now find their words very true, for I most certainly do repent having parted with this castle.'

When his companions, who were now poor, thus heard Aymerigot complain, and perceived he was in earnest, they replied,—‘ Aymerigot, we are ready to obey your commands. Let us renew the war, and consider what strong place we may seize on in Auvergne or Limousin, and fortify it. We shall soon recover our losses, and have full scope for pillaging, as the count-dauphin and his brother Hugh are now out of the country, with many other knights and squires, on the expedition to Barbary ; and in particular the lord de Coucy, who is lieutenant for the king over all these parts, is now likewise absent on this same expedition. We need not therefore fear him, nor the duke of Berry, who is at Paris, and has been so some time amusing himself.’

‘ I know not well how to act,’ said Aymerigot ; ‘ for though I am well inclined to follow what you advise, yet as I am personally named in the treaties, I am particularly pointed at.’ ‘ Ah,’ answered his companions, ‘ that need not make any difference, if you be willing. You are no vassal to the <sup>King</sup> of France, and therefore owe him neither homage nor obedience. You are the king of England’s man ; and your inheritance, which is now destroyed, was in Limousin. We make war to obtain a livelihood, for we must live, and the English will never be displeased with us for so doing. All who wish for gain will join us ; and I think we may shew a sufficient cause for making

making war, by declaring we have not been paid the compositions that are due to us from Auvergne. Let us send, therefore, to the peasants of different villages (taking care, however, to be strong enough to enforce our orders), and tell them, that unless they compound with us, we will make war on them.'

' Well, be it so,' replied Aymerigot; ' but where can we at this moment fix our place of residence?' Some of them said,—' We know of a fort that is dismantled, belonging to the lord de la Tour, which no one guards. Let us go thither, and repair and strengthen it; and, when this is done, we will garrison it, and overrun at our pleasure Limousin and Auvergne.'

' And where is this fort situated?' asked Aymerigot.

' One league from la Tour,' answered those who were acquainted with it, and had well examined its situation: ' it is called la Roche de Vandais.'

' On my faith, you say well: it is the very place for us,' replied Aymerigot; ' and, although the lands are now separated from its dependance, it is a mesne fief on Limoges. We will go and look at it, and, if worth while, take possession and fortify it.'

Having determined on this, they all went to la Roche de Vandais, examined its strength minutely, and were more pleased with it than before: they instantly took possession, and by degrees fortified the place before they made any excursions or did harm to the country. When they had made it sufficiently

sufficiently strong to withstand an attack or siege, and the companions were all mounted, they began to overrun the more immediate neighbourhood, to make prisoners and ransom them. They laid in stores of flesh, meal, wax, wine, salt, iron, steel, and other necessaries; for nothing came amiss to them that was not too hot or too heavy.

The inhabitants of the country were much astonished at this, for they thought themselves in perfect security on account of the truce between the two kings; but these robbers seized whatever they pleased in their houses, or in the fields, calling themselves the Adventurers. The lord de la Tour had his town and castle well guarded, for he was not well pleased to have such neighbours a league from his residence. The dauphiness of Auvergne, a valiant lady and of great prudence, who lived with her children in the strong castle of the good town of Sardes\*, situated on the river Eveque, did not think herself in safety when she heard that Aymerigot and his band had fortified themselves within la Roche de Vandais. She instantly ordered the garrisons of her castles of Marquel, Ondable, Chillac and Blere†, to be reinforced with men at arms, to avoid their being surprised; for she much dreaded Aymerigot, ever since he had received from her, in one payment, five thousand florins.

---

\* Sardes—is Zarades, MSS. Q. if not Ardres, which is a town in Auvergne, and on a small river that falls into the Allier; but its name is not in the map nor Gazetteer.

† Blere. Q. Bleſſe.

The countries of Auvergne and Limousin now took alarm; and the knights and squires, with the townsmen of Clermont, Montferrant and Riom, and the towns on the Allier, resolved to send notice of their situation to the king of France. In this they were joined by the dauphinefs; but, during this time, those in la Roche de Vandais fortified themselves very strongly, and while about it they erected huts covered with boughs for their horses.

When it was known to those who had been disbanded, and were now out, of pay, that Aymerigot Marcel was continuing the war, they were much rejoiced: many came to offer him their services, and he had very soon more than he wished. None of them asked for pay, but solely to be retained by him, for they knew well that those under him would gain a sufficiency from the overplus of the plunder which he gave up to his men. Sometimes he made excursions in the upper parts of the district, and sometimes on the contrary side, for no one ventured as yet to oppose him, so that his fame was spread far and near. Nothing was talked of in Auvergne and Limousin but the robbers of la Roche de Vandais, and greatly was the country frightened by them.

The garrison of Chaluçet, under the command of Perrot le Béarnois, adhered steadily to the truce; and when he learnt that Aymerigot was thus harassing the countries where the inhabitants imagined themselves to be at peace with every one, he was much angered, and said he behaved very ill. He also sent to tell him not to expect any assistance,

assistance, nor to be admitted into Chaluçet nor into any other place under his command. Aymerigot was indifferent as to this, for he had plenty of places to retire to, in case of need, beside Chaluçet, and men enough. There were besides numbers that had nothing to do, and wished for mischief, who daily offered to increase his forces.

Perrot le Béarnois forbade his men, under pain of death, to make any sallies injurious to the country people, for he declared he would most strictly and honourably abide by the letter of the truce. Olim Barbe, however, captain of Donzac, dissembled in this business, saying publicly he would adhere to the terms of the truce; but I was told that his men sometimes made excursions privately, and, when they had collected any considerable booty he insisted on having the advantage of it.

The deputies from Clermont, Montferrant and Riom arrived at Paris, where they found the king, the duke of Berry, the duke of Touraine and sir Oliver de Clisson constable of France. They immediately waited on the duke of Berry and his council, to state the cause of their coming, and to inform them that Aymerigot Marcel was pillaging Auvergne, and that evil-minded persons were daily increasing. They entreated them for God's sake to provide a remedy, for, if it were suffered to continue much longer, the whole of Auvergne and Limousin would be completely destroyed.

The king and the duke of Berry were much astonished on hearing this intelligence, for they thought

thought the whole country was at peace, in conformity to the truce.

The deputies were asked if the garrisons of Chaluçet and Donzac remained quiet: they replied,— ‘ they had no complaints to make against any one but Aymerigot Marcel and his companions, who had fortified la Roche de Vandais.’

‘ Well,’ replied the king and the duke of Berry, ‘ now, good people, return home, and look to us; for we will speedily provide a remedy that shall be sufficient: make what haste you can back, and tell this as our answer, to those who have sent you.’ The deputies were well pleased with this speech, and, having reposèd themselves for two days at Paris, they set out on their return, having taken leave of the king and the duke of Berry.

The king and his council did not delay attending to this business, for the duke of Berry had large possessions in Auvergne, and urged them on. They considered whom they should send thither, for the lord de Coucy, the lieutenant of all the country, from la Rochelle to Bourdeaux, was now abroad in Barbary. He had, indeed, at his departure, appointed his cousin, sir Robert de Buthune viscount de Meaux, his deputy during his absence. The council did not forget this, and thought he was best entitled to the command. Inquiries were made where he was to be found, and they learnt that he was at his residence at Condé sur Marne. Letters were written to him, in the name, for him to come to Paris, and the messenger hastening with them, found him and his

his lady at Condé. Having delivered his letters, the viscount read their contents, and said he would instantly obey the king's orders, as was but right.

Having made his preparations as speedily as he could, he left Condé and rode on to Paris, where he waited on the king and council. On entering the council-chamber, he was told,—‘ Viscount, make haste and assemble all your retainers of men at arms, for you must immediately set off for Auvergne. There are bands of pillagers, of whom Aymerigot Marcel, as we are informed, is the chief, who rob and imprison the country people. Let them be driven thence; and if you can any way entrap Aymerigot, and deliver him up to us, we shall have great joy. Orders have been given for you to receive the pay of your men at arms at Clermont in Auvergne; and, with regard to your expenses thither, speak to our treasurer of the army. He has been charged to pay your smaller expenses, and to hurry you away, for the businefs requires it.’

The viscount replied he was quite ready, and, leaving the council, returned to his inn, where he employed persons to write to such knights and squires of the isle of France and in Picardy, who were his acquaintance and dependants, desiring them instantly to set out for Chartres, where they would find him prepared to muster them. All to whom he had sent complied with his request; for they loved him, and looked to him as to an able captain. They were all at Chartres on the

appointed day, and amounted to two hundred lances, good men and to be depended on.

After they had been mustered, they left Chartres, and took the road towards Auvergne, through the Bourbonnois. The news of this assistance coming thither was soon spread abroad, to the great joy of the inhabitants of Auvergne. It was fortunate so much haste had been made in forwarding this force; for, had it been delayed six days later, Aymerigot and his troops had planned to ravage the country, between Clermont and Montferrant, and down the river Allier, and also the surrounding country of Riom, as far as Gannat\*. Had they done so, they would have plundered it of one hundred thousand francs at least; for the parts I have mentioned are the very richest in Auvergne. None could have opposed them, for the whole country was void of men at arms; and the reports were, that Aymerigot's troops were more numerous than ever.

Aymerigot and his men were prepared for this excursion; but they learnt, I know not how, whether from pilgrims or spies, that a large body of men at arms was marching against them, under the command of the viscount de Meaux, to besiege and to drive them out of their fortress of la Roche de Vandais.

This intelligence made them defer their intended excursion, and shut themselves within their fort,

---

\* Gannat,—a town in the Bourbonnois, five leagues from

for

for they foresaw they would be besieged. Aymé-  
rigot now began to repent what he had done, for, should he be taken, no ransom would be accepted for his life. He thus opened himself to some of his companions : ' I am completely dis-  
graced, by having followed bad advice, and avarice will be my ruin ; for I shall be destroyed without hope of ransom.' They replied,—' Why are you now so doubtful of yourself ? We know you are the most powerful man at arms in these countries, and you have a good garrison, well provided with all things. We are men of deter-  
mined resolution, as eager to defend our lives, as you can be to defend your own. You cannot be ruined without our suffering with you : if, unfor-  
tunately, you be made prisoner, you are so wealthy, you can easily tempt them with your ransom ; but our poverty must prevent us from so doing, and our heads pay the forfeit. We will therefore sell them as dearly as we can, and guard them to the utmost of our abilities. Be not, therefore, alarmed at any thing you may see or hear : we need not care for the siege, if we manage our defence with prudence.' Thus did the companions of Aymé-  
rigot Marcel comfort him.

The viscount de Meaux, with his men at arms, continued their march through Moulins, in the Bourbonnois ; but the duchess of Bourbon, daughter to the count dauphin, received there the vis-  
count and the knights very grandly, and enter-  
tained them at dinner. That evening they lay at Saint Pourçain. Thence they marched to Gannat,

Aigue-perfes\*, and Riom, where they halted. They then marched to Clermont, and were gladly received by the bishop and the inhabitants. The men at arms received pay at Clermont, for a tax had been levied to this effect, and it was there delivered to them. They continued their march to Nôtre Dame d'Orcinal †, four leagues from la Roche de Vandais. The viscount de Meaux there fixed his quarters, as the knights and squires from Auvergne and Limousin had named this place for the point of assembly. When they were all collected, they amounted to more than four hundred lances, and one hundred genoese cross-bows. There were with the viscount, the lord de Montagu from the Vermandois, and his brother, the lord de Domme, sir Bernard de la Riviere, sir William le Bourgiller, the lord de Domme, the lord de la Roche, the lord de la Tour, sir Lewis d'Abiere ‡, the lord de Saint-Ampisse, sir Robert Dauphin, with many more.

The captains of the Genoese were two valiant squires, called Albert d'Espinolle and Callinace. Sir Lewis l'Esglinelle, a gallant squire, was at this time the viscount's master of the household. The Genoese, as well as the whole army, was completely equipped with arms and other necessaries, or they

---

\* Aigue-perfes,—a village in Limousin, diocese of Limoges.

† Nôtre Dame d'Orcinal,—is not in the Gazetteer, but Nôtre Dame de Roquemadour, which is the name in the MSS. is a celebrated pilgrimage in Quercy, near Bageac.

‡ In the MS. it is sir Louis d'Antibiere.

would

would not have passed the muster made by the viscount de Meaux.

The garrison, under the command of Aymerigot Marcel and his uncle Guyot du Sel, in la Roche de Vandais, hearing that so large a force was now advanced to Nôtre Dame de Roquemadour, with the intention of besieging them, called a general council, to consider how they could the most effectually resist it. They first resolved, they had not any occasion for horses, since they would be prevented from using them by the siege. Tolerably near to la Roche de Vandais was another fort, called Saint Soupery, under the government of Aymerigot, where his wife resided, and whither he had sent the greater part of his wealth. He gave orders for the servants and horses to be received in this fort, until better times.

La Roche de Vandais was naturally strong, and the present garrison had fortified it by every means in their power. The lord de la Tour was greatly blamed by the country for his neglect of it, as they said it was from this circumstance that they were now so harassed; and, if he had thought the expense of keeping a guard too great, why had he not given it up to the inhabitants of the country, who would have dismantled it so that no one would have ever thought of repairing it? whereas now the walls had been left entire, and the mansion tolerably good: such was the state in which Aymerigot had found it.

La Roche de Vandais is separated from the high mountains that surround it, and is seated on an

insulated rock ; one side of which they had so strongly fortified that it could only be approached in front, and attacked by skirmishes. The force, under the command of the viscount de Meaux, left Notre Dame de Roquemadour, and advanced to la Roche de Vandais, which they laid siege to, and by degrees improved their quarters. The countess-dauphine, on hearing that la Roche de Vandais was besieged, with a sufficient force under the viscount de Meaux, was greatly rejoiced ; and as she imagined, from the haste in which he had left Paris, he might not have brought tents or pavilions with him, she instantly ordered two handsome tents belonging to her lord to be made ready and sent to him as a loan, for his better accommodation during the siege.

The viscount received very thankfully these tents, which came so opportunely, and returned his best compliments to the countess for her attentions. The lord de la Tour was at home, being but one league from his castle, so that he had every thing he could wish for. The other knights and squires accommodated themselves as well as they could. They had provision in abundance and cheap, for it was sent thicker from all quarters. As it was the middle of August, the weather was warm and pleasant, and the knights were comfortably lodged under huts made of green boughs.

Intelligence was brought to the army that made them suspicious left the neighbouring garrisons of Chaluzet and Donzac would unite together, and

one morning or evening, when they were off their guard, come and attack them, to force them to raise their siege. The viscount de Meaux and his knights held a council on this intelligence, and resolved to send a herald to Perrot le Béarnois, governor of Chaluçet, and to Olim Barbe at Donzac, to know whether they were at war or peace with these garrisons, and according to their answer to prepare themselves.

The herald, being instructed as to what he was to say and how he was to act, departed, and, on his arrival at Chaluçet, accidentally found Perrot le Béarnois at the barriers amusing himself with his companions in throwing the bar. He dismounted, and asked for the governor. On his being pointed out, he advanced towards him, and punctually delivered the message he had been charged with. Perrot replied,—‘Herald, you will tell your masters, who have sent you hither, that we mean as loyally and truly to keep the truce which has been concluded between France and England, as we expect it will be kept with us. Should any of our people infringe the smallest article of it, and we be made acquainted therewith, we will lay hands on them, if it should be in our power, and inflict such punishment as they deserve and as we have promised to execute on them. I wish you would also tell your masters, that what Aymerigot Marcel has done was without any advice from us, to whom he never spoke on the subject. We have forbidden him or his people to seek refuge within our do-

main, and should they think of so doing it will ill befall them.'

The herald was conducted within the fort, and entertained at dinner; after which he took his leave, and Perrot, out of love to the lords of France, presented him with ten francs. The herald received them thankfully, and departed for Donzac, where he saw the governor Olim Barbe, a Gascon. He addressed him as he had done Perrot, and received for answer, that he would not on any account infringe the truce, for by so doing he should be disgraced. The herald dined at the castle of Donzac, and, on taking leave, had ten francs given to him. He returned to la Roche de Vandais, where he was surrounded by knights and squires anxious to hear the answers he had brought. The herald minutely related every thing that had passed; and the viscount de Meaux and his companions were more easy respecting Perrot le Béarnois and Olim Barbe than before; without fear from that quarter, they continued their siege with greater vigour.

## CHAP. XIV.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL ENDEAVOURS, BUT IN VAIN, TO RAISE THE SIEGE OF LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, BY LETTERS AND MESSAGES TO THE KING OF ENGLAND, THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, THE VIS-COUNT DE MEAUX, AND EVEN TO THE DUKE OF BERRY.

DURING the siege of la Roche de Vandais, which lasted for nine weeks, there were constant skirmishes between the two parties, in which many were wounded by the cross-bows, for the Genoese are expert marksmen. The garrison had much the advantage of the besiegers, and I will tell you how. They could sally forth whenever they pleased, for it would require six thousand men at least to have completely surrounded the castle. When the siege first took place, Aymerigot felt that he was acting wrong; but to turn the matter as much to his advantage as he could, and if possible preserve la Roche de Vandais, he determined to send one of his men, who was well spoken, to England, with credential letters to the king and the duke of Lancaster.

Aymerigot opened the matter to his uncle, Guyot du Sel, who, though about sixty years of age, was well acquainted with arms and with mankind. Guyot approved of the manner in which his nephew intended acting, and said, that to send a person

a person well spoken, and well informed, to England, would not be lost pains. They selected a varlet who had been educated by them, and instructed him as follows : ‘ We will conduct thee in safety out of this fort, in spite of our enemies, and give thee money sufficient for the journey thou art to perform, as well as for thy other wants. Thou wilt carry to England these three letters ; one to the king, one to the duke of Lancaster, and the other to the king’s council ; which thou wilt punctually deliver. Thou wilt recommend me handsomely to them ; and, as these are *credential* letters, they will ask, ‘ What is the object of thy coming ? ’ Thou wilt say, that Aymerigot Marcel, their little soldier and subject, who is firm in his obedience to their will, is besieged in a small fort belonging to the king of England, as one of the mesne fiefs of Limousin ; that those who are before it exert themselves to their utmost to gain the place, and make him and his companions prisoners ; that the besiegers are sent thither by the king of France, under the command of a cousin to the lord de Coucy, called sir Robert viscount de Meaux ; that the object of this mission is to request the king of England, his council, and the duke of Lancaster, as lieutenant for the king in the Bordelais, to write to the viscount de Meaux to depart instantly from before la Roche de Vandais with all his men. Be sure to have inserted in the letters for the viscount, that he be careful not to infringe the truce signed at Leulinghen, or to dread the consequences, because I know not what effect these

these letters may have on the viscount, nor what answer he will make, for he is a strange sort of a man. Obtain, likewise, letters from the king, the council, and the duke of Lancaster, to the duke of Berry; for, if he please, the siege will be instantly raised. Manage to bring back with thee, for thy greater credit, one of the knights of honour to the king or the duke of Lancaster, or Derby the herald. Salute him from me, and say, if he will accompany thee, (for he is an able negotiator, and well acquainted with the duke of Berry and the lords of France,) I will give him one hundred francs. Keep well in thy memory all I have said, and tell every one to whom thou shalt speak, that this little fort, which I have garrisoned, will be very convenient to the English on the renewal of the war; for it is situated on the borders of Auvergne and Limousin, and those countries may be made to contribute upwards of two hundred thousand francs in one season.'

Aymerigot Marcel having, in the presence of his uncle, well tutored his messenger, and given him his credential letters, and one hundred francs for his expenses, he was escorted from the fort at midnight, ~~on~~ foot, to another fort belonging to Aymerigot, called Saint Soupery. He there chose the best horse, as they were all at his disposal, for he had a long journey to make, and passed through France as a native of the province of Auvergne. On his arrival at Calais, he made acquaintance with sir John Beauchamp, the governor, to whom he told a part of his business, that he might be the

the sooner forwarded on his journey. This succeeded; for sir John ordered him an immediate passage to Dover, whence, on having his horse put on shore, he continued his road to London, and there arrived in a day and a half. He was fortunate to find the king, his two uncles of Lancaster and York, with the council, at the palace of Westminster, considering the affairs of Northumberland, and what force they should send thither, for the Scots no way observed the truce.

The messenger from Aymerigot having intrusted the subject of his coming to the master of the inn where he put up, he conducted him to Westminster, and procured him admission to the duke of Lancaster, who had arrived before the other counsellors, and was in the presence-chamber. He presented the duke with the letter addrefsed to him, who, having opened and read it, took the messenger aside to learn the cause of his arrival. The varlet related to him every particular wherewith Aymerigot had charged him. The duke, having heard him, asked if he had more letters. He replied, ‘One for the king, and another for the council.’ ‘It is well,’ answered the duke: ‘I will obtain for you an audience,’ and gave orders to one of his attendants to take care of him.

The duke entered the council-chamber, and, when he saw a favourable opportunity, mentioned the arrival of Aymerigot’s messenger: by his motion, the varlet was introduced, and presented his letters

to the king and to the council. When they were read, he was desired to explain the object of his mission. Being well tutored, and not afraid of speaking; he was not abashed, otherwise he need not have made the journey, and he explained so eloquently the reasons of his coming, and the wishes of Aymerigot, that he was attentively listened to. When he had told all he was charged with, he was informed that they would consider the matter, and that he should have an answer to his demands.

He then quitted the council-chamber, and waited for the answer to the letters. He was told that the king would write to the viscount de Meaux, and to the duke of Berry, in the manner Aymerigot had desired. The duke of Lancaster promised to do the same, and that these letters should be delivered by an English squire attached to the duke; and that Derby the herald should cross the sea, and accompany them when they gave their letters, to aid their success; for he was well known to many lords in Auvergne, particularly to the duke of Berry.

Aymerigot's messenger was very happy to hear this, and followed so closely the duke of Lancaster that in a few days the letters were written, and the gentleman, whose name, I believe, was Cherbury, who was to carry them, received orders of departure. The herald Derby most willingly went with him, for Aymerigot's varlet had told him from his master, that if he would cross the sea, he

he should receive one hundred francs on his arrival  
at la Roche de Vandais.

The letters being sealed, these three took their leave of the duke of Lancaster, and hastened to Dover: they crossed to Calais in a passage-boat, where they lay that night, and at low water disembarked their horses, and on the morrow rode to Boulogne. They passed through Picardy to Paris, but, making no stay there, continued their journey to Auvergne.

When arrived at Limoges and the environs of la Roche de Vandais, they cautiously advanced to enter the castle privately; but, on consideration, the squire and herald did not think it prudent to enter la Roche de Vandais, but sent the messenger forward, saying they could now find the way themselves, and that it would not have a good appearance should they be seen with him, for it would look as if he had been sent to bring them from England; and that what they had to say to the viscount de Meaux would come with more weight as from the king of England himself, than if any others had interfered in it.

The varlet agreed to their reasons, and, at night-fall, returned to the fort, by a road he was acquainted with, without any hindrance from the besiegers. He there found Aymerigot Marcel, his uncle Guyot du Sel, and the other companions, who made him good cheer, and were astonished that he could have returned from England in so few days. He related every thing that had passed, and that a squire from the duke of Lancaster and Derby the herald

herald had accompanied him with letters from the king and the duke to the viscount de Meaux and to the duke of Berry, should there be occasion. ‘ And why did they not come with you hither?’ asked Aymerigot. ‘ Through prudence, as they told me,’ replied the varlet, ‘ for they will undertake the commission and delivery of their letters themselves, and think it better than that any appearance of collusion should be seen between you and them.’ ‘ They act wisely,’ said Guyot du Sel, ‘ and shew by this, that the king of England and the duke of Lancaster send them, of their own accord, and that they are interested in the matter.’ ‘ Such are their intentions,’ answered the messenger.

Aymerigot was delighted on hearing this, and told his varlet that he had done justice to his commission, and in a few days he would handsomely reward him for it. The English squire and Derby rode on for la Roche de Vandais, to the place where the besiegers lay, and enquired for the quarters of the viscount de Meaux. On being conducted thither, they found the viscount amusing himself with seeing the bar thrown.

On their approach, they bowed, which civility he returned, and asked, ‘ whence they came.’ They replied, ‘ from England, and that they were sent by the king and the duke of Lancaster.’ ‘ You are welcome,’ said the viscount; ‘ but what business can have brought you to this wild country?’ ‘ My lord,’ answered Derby, ‘ this is a squire attached to the duke of Lancaster, who brings you

letters

letters from the king of England and from his lord, which, if you please, you will read. I have accompanied him, because I am so well acquainted with this country, to serve him as a guide.'

The squire presented his letters, which the viscount, after examining the seals, knew to be authentic, and to come from England. He called one of his men aside who could read, and had their contents repeated over two or three times, until he was fully master of them. He was while pensive, for the king of England had written to complain that he was day and night occupying a part of his territories with a large army, and doing acts to infringe the truce, which he ought not to do, being directly contrary to the articles that had been sworn and sealed between him and his adversary of France ; and that, as soon as he should have perused these letters, he must raise the siege, march away his army, and leave Aymerigot Marcel in peaceable possession of a castle which had cost him such large sums to fortify. Such, and many other expressions in favour of Aymerigot, did these letters contain.

The letter from the duke of Lancaster was nearly similar to those from the king and council, for he was sovereign lord and duke of Aquitaine.

The viscount de Meaux, having consulted some of his friends, said to the squire and the herald,— ‘ My fair sirs, the intelligence you have brought demands full consideration : I will advise upon it, and you shall soon have my answer.’ They were then conducted to the viscount’s tent, to partake

of his wine. During this, a council was summoned of the lord de la Tour, sir William le Bouteiller, sir Robert Dauphin, sir Louis d'Abiere, the lord de Montagu, and sir Berald de la Riviere, for this last was of the household of the viscount.

When they were assembled, the viscount explained to them the cause, and laid before them the letters he had received. The knights were much surprised how intelligence of their siege could have been carried to England for such letters to be sent from thence, as their siege had not lasted one month. 'I will tell you what I imagine,' said the viscount: 'this Aymerigot is a cunning fellow; and the moment he perceived we intended besieging him, he sent a person to England to request such letters might be written as are now before you, and which I shall obey or not as I please. I inform you, that I shall instantly answer them: but, in regard to the orders of the king of England and the duke of Lancaster, I shall not pay any attention to them, for I am no way bound to obey them, but solely the king of France, my lord, who has intrusted me with this command, and sent me hither. Let the herald and squire be introduced, and I will give them my answer.'

They were sought for, and conducted to the assembly of the viscount and his knights: when in their presence, they bowed their heads, and the viscount thus spoke: 'You Derby, and you Thomas Cherbury, for such I think are the names you are designed by in the letters which you have brought from the king of England and the duke

of Lancaster. They have been informed, it seems, (but I know not how, whether by a messenger from Aymerigot Marcel or some friend of his, who has been in his name to England) that I am quartered with a large army on the lands of the king of England, and order me instantly to raise the siege, march away my men, and leave Aymerigot in peaceable possession of the small fort that has cost him so large a sum to repair and strengthen.

‘ They tell me likewise, that I am risking my own dishonour, by thus infringing a truce, which has been agreed to for three years, between the kings of France and England, and their allies. I declare to you, my fair sirs, that I will not, by any means, violate the smallest article of the truce, nor shall it be infringed, by any act of mine, during my residence here.

‘ I am the king of France’s subject, my liege lord, who has ordered me hither as his marshal, for the present, from the complaints that have been made him, by the nobles and other inhabitants of the countries of Auvergne and Limousin, of the great damages they have suffered from Aymerigot Marcel, who has seized a fort on the confines of these two provinces that had been abandoned, and was never again intended to be inhabited, which he has repaired and strengthened, not as a mansion, or house for recreation, but as a castle and rendezvous for robbers and marauders. I am therefore ordered hither to defend and guard the country against such pillagers as may be collected

collected within this fort, called la Roche de Vandais, to prevent their increase in numbers and in wickedness, and to arrest all of them I may be able to lay hold of, that they may suffer the punishment due to their crimes. In consequence, my fair sirs, I shall strictly obey the commands I have received, and loyally acquit myself of my duty. Of course, therefore, I shall not move from hence for any orders I may receive, until I shall have possession of this fort and the garrison that now holds out against me and my companions.

‘Should Aymerigot Marcel set up a plea, that I have any way broken the truce, which is equivalent to a perfect peace for the time, let him come forth, and I will have him fought with by as good, if not a better, man than himself, and prove that it is he alone who has, and continues to violate the articles of the truce. Now, my fair sirs, having maturely weighed every thing, I have given you my answer, and you may return when you please; but I beg that, on your return, you will neither add to nor diminish any part of what I have said to you; for reporters, by not relating the exact words in which any conversation has taken place, do not truly inform their lords of the matter.’

‘My lord,’ replied the squire, ‘Derby and myself are come hither solely to hear what answer you shall be pleased to make us, and carry it back, and since you have done so, we need not longer remain.’

They took leave of the viscount, who ordered ten francs to be given the herald, out of affection to the king of England, who had sent him, and regard for the duke of Lancaster, to whom he was attached. When they were on the road to Clermont, for they said they had come that way, and would return by the same, and when they had advanced about half a league, the following conversation passed between them : ‘ We have had ill success : we must wait on the duke of Berry, who lives in Auvergne.’ ‘ He is lord of this whole country,’ said Derby, ‘ and himself duke of Berry and Auvergne. If he will order the viscount de Meaux to decamp, he must do so, for he dare not disobey him. As we have letters to him from the king and the duke of Lancaster, it is but right he should see them, and that we should know his intention on their subject.’ Thus did they converse until they arrived at Clermont. They were made welcome, for the herald was well acquainted in these parts, having been there before ; and when any questions were asked, who and what they were, they declared themselves messengers from the king of England. Having inquired where the duke resided, they were told at a handsome castle, called la Nonnette. The herald knew it well, and, leaving Clermont, they rode to Vioire\*, and thence to la Nonnette, but the mountain is very steep on which is situated the castle. On their

---

\* Vioire,—probably Iffoire, as la Nonnette is near to that town.

arrival,

arrival, they found numbers of the duke's servants playing in the square before the castle-gate. The herald was known to many of them, and conducted to the duke of Berry, who, in consideration of his regard to the king of England and the duke of Lancaster, ordered him and his companion to be well taken care of.

The squire being the bearer of the letters from the king, presented them to the duke, who, having read them twice slowly through, paused a little, and then gave such courteous answers as both were satisfied with; for he said, 'from his affection to his cousins, he would do all in his power to comply with their requests.' The herald and squire concluded from this, that they should completely succeed in their mission, and were in high spirits; but, as you shall hear, they were disappointed.

The duke of Berry was not negligent of the business, and exerted himself to have the siege of la Roche de Vandais raised, from his regard to the king of England and the duke of Lancaster, who entreated it; and engaged, that if Aymerigot Marcel were left in the quiet possession of his fort, he should not, hereafter, molest the country, and that he should make any reparation to the king of France for having offended him. The duke of Berry, anxious to oblige the English who were in his castle, wrote letters to this purport to the viscount de Meaux; and, before they were sealed, had them read to his guests, who were exceedingly pleased with their contents.

The letters were dispatched by an able squire of the duke to the viscount de Meaux, who, having learnt their contents, summoned his principal knights, and had them again read in their presence, during the time the squire who had brought them was made welcome; for, out of love to the duke of Berry, they gave him good cheer. ‘Gentlemen,’ said the viscount to his companions, ‘we shall never have peace since the duke of Berry supports Aymerigot, who is the greatest enemy Auvergne and its poor inhabitants have eyer had, and for these last twelve years has so sore oppressed them. I thought the duke hated him; but it seems I was mistaken, for he commands me to break up the siege. I will not at this moment obey his orders, but excuse myself from so doing, by the commission I have received from the king our lord, who strictly enjoined me, on leaving Paris, not to quit this place for any orders I might receive, except they came from himself, until I had conquered the fort of la Roche de Vandais, and taken Aymerigot by fair or foul means. The duke now commands me to raise the siege, the instant I have read his letters; but, by my faith, I will do no such thing.’

‘Sir,’ replied the knights and squires of Auvergne, ‘you say loyally and well: we will keep steady to you. We suppose that my lord of Berry is induced to write thus in favour of his enemies, by similar letters from the king of England and the duke of Lancaster to those you have received, which the herald and English squire have carried to him.’

him.' 'I dare say you have guessed right,' said the viscount: 'I will, if I can, find out the truth of it.'

The squire was called in to receive his answer, and, when in the presence of the assembled knights, the viscount thus addressed him, calling him by his name, for he knew him well: 'Peter, I wish you to understand that I owe, and am desirous of paying, all obedience to my lord of Berry, for he is so noble, and so nearly related to the king, that I should be sorry to do otherwise, but myself and companions, whom you see, have been for these five weeks before this fort, to take it and the thieves who garrison it, by positive orders from the king and his council. We wonder, therefore, and not without reason, how my lord of Berry can entreat us in favour of his enemies, and desire us to raise the siege and march away. We all agree in declaring that, if it were done, we should give the greatest encouragement to all thieves who in future may overrun the kingdom, and induce them to commit the greatest outrages. Peter, you will tell the duke of Berry from us all, and from me in particular, that we are ready and willing to obey his commands, but that I have been so positively ordered to continue this siege, with as much vigour and patience as possible, until I be master of the place and garrison, that I dare not act contrary; and say, that I shall not obey any other commands but those of the king, whose subject I am, and who has sent me hither. I beg of you, Peter, to tell me one thing, if it is not an improper question for

you to answer, how comes it that my lord of Berry  
sues in favour of Aymerigot Marcel, who has done  
such mischief to Auvergne and Limousin, now that  
he is in a fair way of being caught and punished  
for his wickedness and breach of faith in the articles  
of the truce?

The squire replied, 'Two Englishmen, a herald  
and another, have come to the duke, with ~~very~~  
pressing letters from the king of England and the  
duke of Lancaster in favour of Aymerigot.' 'I  
readily believe you,' said the viscount: 'it is  
Derby the herald, and a squire called Cherbury,  
who likewise brought me the other day letters  
similar, I suppose, to those you mention. Say  
also from me, in addition to what I have before  
spoken, that I beg my lord of Berry to consider  
well this matter; that letters thus obtained from  
lords on the other side of the water deserve no at-  
tention from lords on this side, who love the ho-  
nour or advantage of the kingdom of France.'

'My lord,' answered the squire, 'be assured  
that I will repeat every word you have said to the  
duke of Berry, for Aymerigot is not so much in  
my favour but I would rather see his punishment  
than his deliverance.' On this, the squire took  
leave of the viscount and knights present, mounted  
his horse, and rode to la Nonnette, where he re-  
lated to the duke of Berry, that the viscount de  
Meaux would not, for any other commands but  
those directly from the king, break up his siege.  
This answer was not very agreeable to the duke,  
who imagined he was of that importance, his let-  
ters

ters ought to have attention paid them in France, or at least in Auvergne. When Derby and his companion learnt the purport of the answer, they were much cast down, for they saw they had laboured in vain. They asked the duke, what they were now to do. ‘ Shall we leave you with unsatisfactory answers to our king and the duke of Lancaster? who had the fullest hope you would have had the siege of la Roche de Vandais raised, for it is within your territories.’

‘ A little patience,’ replied the duke: ‘ Aymerigot is in a very strong place, and, unless some unfortunate accident happen, cannot for a long time be taken. I must shortly go to Paris; and, when there, I will press the matter warmly with the king and his council, since my good cousins of England are so earnest in the matter. You both shall accompany me, and witness the exertions I make.’ This speech contented the squire and the herald.

Within four days afterward, the duke set out from la Nonnette, leaving there the duchess and the greater part of his household, and went to Riom in Auvergne. He waited there eight days for the count de Sancerre and the lord de Renel\*, whom he had sent to Avignon on his private affairs. On their arrival, they set out together through the Bourbonnois, and by a short day’s journey, came to Bourges, where they tarried two days. On the third, the duke departed, and came to Mehun sur

---

\* The lord de Renel. The MSS. have Revel.

Yevre\*, where he had one of the handsomest castles in the world ; for the duke had expended upwards of three hundred thousand francs in building and ornamenting it.

He remained there a fortnight, to the great uneasiness of the two Englishmen who were suitors for Aymerigot ; but, as they could not help it, they dissembled their thoughts. Indeed, the duke no longer intended interfering about him, and I will explain why. The count de Sancerre, the lord de Renel and sir Peter Mespis were his principal advisers : they heavily charged Aymerigot with several crimes, gently blaming the duke, and saying it was unbecoming him to interfere in the affairs of so notorious a pillager, whose whole life had been infamous ; that he had committed such disgraceful acts in Auvergne and Limousin, it would be improper to speak in his favour, and that he ought to be left for the king's justice to punish. This, and speeches similar to it, had so cooled the duke as to prevent him from thinking longer on the subject ; but the two Englishmen did not neglect their duty in reminding the duke of it, who, dissembling his real opinion, courteously answered, 'Have patience : we shall soon be at Paris.' Notwithstanding this, he still remained at Mehun sur Yevre more than three

---

\* Mehun sur Yevre. Charles VII. built a large castle, or probably repaired this of the duke of Berry, wherein he died 1461, having starved himself for fear of being poisoned by his son, Louis XI.

weeks, planning new improvements with his master of the works, Andrew Beau-neveu, in sculpture and painting; for in such arts he took great delight, and was well skilled in them. There was not a more able man in this respect than master Andrew Beau-neveu, in any country, as may be judged from the many fine works he executed in France, Hainault (his native country), and England, where they now remain.

---

## CHAP. XV.

AYMERIGOT MARCEL HAVING LEFT LA ROCHE-DE VANDAIS, TO SEEK SUCCOUR FROM OTHER PILLAGERS, HIS LIEUTENANT, GUYOT DU SEL, IS SURPRISED BY AN AMBUSCADE, AND THE FORT SURRENDERS ON CAPITULATION.

I WILL now relate what happened to Aymerigot Marcel, and to his fort of la Roche de Vandais. He had a quick imagination, and concluded, from the continuance of the siege, that the letters from the king of England and the duke of Lancaster had failed in the effect he looked to from them. He therefore thought of another expedient, which was to leave his castle and ride night and day unto the garrisons in Perigord and other places, to call upon Guyonnet de Sainte Foix, Er-

nauton

nauton de Sainte Colombe, Ernauton de Rostem, John de Morsen, Peter d'Anchin, Remonnet de Copane, with other gascon and bernois men at arms of the English party, and entice them by fair speeches to enter Auvergne for the sake of plunder, and then to advance to la Roche de Vandais, some morning or evening, and capture the knights and squires before it, which would bring them more than one hundred thousand francs for their ransoms, without counting smaller articles of pillage.

He explained his whole plan to his uncle, Guyot du Sel, and asked his opinion. He replied, that he very much approved of it, for that he saw no other means of being delivered from the French. 'Well, uncle,' said Aymerigot, 'since you approve, I will undertake it; but I must beg one thing of you before I set out.' 'What is that?' replied Guyot. 'It is, that during my absence you never sally out of the castle, nor open the barriers, whatever skirmishes the French may make, for you may lose more than you can gain.' 'I will take care not to do it,' answered Guyot: 'we will remain shut up here, until your return or until we hear some news of you.' 'Indeed, my good uncle, I beg it of you, for we cannot vex them more than by keeping within our walls: as for their attacks and skirmishes, we do not value them.'

Within three days after, Aymerigot left the castle attended only by a page, and began his journey

journey without fear of the French. His intention was to bring back with him some bold companions, and raise the siege.

Although Aymerigot had quitted la Roche de Vandais, it was unknown to the besiegers; for the garrison could go in and out without danger from them.

There were daily skirmishes before the castle and at the barriers; and, about five or six days after the departure of Aymerigot, there was a grand assault made by the French, who were divided into three parties, all of which were engaged. Guyot du Sel was a good man at arms, and had long used them; but through arrogance, and neglecting to observe the orders of his nephew not to open the barriers nor to sally forth on any account, he suffered as you will hear.

Three squires, two from Auvergne and one from Brittany, displayed great courage, and were pre-eminent at this attack at a part of the old walls very near the castle. The squires from Auvergne were called Richard de la Violette and Lubinot de Rochefort; the Breton was le Monadic, who, when made prisoner, at the taking of Ventadour, had attached himself to sir William le Bouteiller. This assault lasted until night, and, though these squires gained renown, the besiegers, in spite of their labour and pain, made no other profit.

The viscount de Meaux determined, that at the next skirmish he would place an ambuscade of twelve men at arms in an old grotto withoutside the fort; and he told his men, — ' Advance to skirmish

at the barriers ; and if you shall perceive the garrison inclined to make a sally, as is likely enough for such covetous persons to do, retire gently on this side the ambush, when you will wheel round to renew the attack, and they, being thus surrounded, will be made prisoners or slain.'

The viscount's plan was executed. Those named for the ambuscade were Lewis de Lefglinelle, Robert de Berthencourt, Vandelle, William de la Saulsoye, Peter de Saint Vidal, Gionnet de Vilieracque, Peter de Col, Andrew de la Roche, John Salmage, with three others to make up the dozen of good men at arms, who posted themselves within the old grotto. Another party went to skirmish, under the command of the three before named squires : they were richly armed at all points, the more to tempt the avarice of the garrison, and were only twelve in number.

When arrived at the barriers, they purposely began the attack most awkwardly, so that Guyot du Sel held them cheap, and said to his companions,— ' By Saint Marcel, we will make a sally ; for there are at the barriers a set of youngsters who, from their manner, do not seem much accustomed to the use of arms. We will teach them their use ; and they cannot avoid being our prisoners. At these words, he had the barriers flung open, and sallied forth, forgetful of his promise to Aymerigot. The great desire he had to perform some deed of arms, and to gain a prize, induced him to act thus.

The French were much rejoiced to see the garrison

rison without the fort, and that Guyot du Sel was among the first: they retreated by little and little until they had passed the ambush, eagerly pursued by Guyot's party. When those in ambush saw it was time, they quitted the grotto, and posted themselves on the road to the fort, shouting out 'Coucy for the viscount!' and thus inclosed their front and rear.

Guyot du Sel, observing this, knew he had been in fault, and that it would be difficult for him to save himself, or to return to the fort. He began to retire towards the barriers, but was strongly opposed. Why should I lengthen my story? They were all made prisoners, as it were in a trap, and led in triumph to the quarters of the viscount and the other knights.

When the viscount de Meaux saw Guyot du Sel, he asked him 'where was Aymerigot Marcel?' for he thought he was in the castle. Guyot replied, 'he was ignorant where he was, for he had left the fort twelve days ago.' The knights, hearing this, concluded he was gone to seek for aid. Guyot du Sel and his fellow-prisoners were then ordered away; and the viscount asked the knights of Auvergne, 'what should be done to these prisoners?' for he wished to act from their decision. Sir William le Bouteiller answered,—'Sir, I certainly believe that Aymerigot Marcel is gone to persuade the garrisons of other forts to come to his assistance: he will easily find, in spite of the truce, adventurers, who will join him in his wickedness, and they may fall on us some morning

morning or evening when we are unprepared to resist them, and do us much damage: Aymerigot is very cunning, and of great wealth. Let us therefore tell Guyot du Sel to surrender la Roche de Vandais, and if he refuse his consent, that his own head, and those of all his companions, shall instantly be sacrificed.'

'This is good advice,' replied the viscount; 'for, in truth, to obtain this fort are we come into the country. If we have not now Aymerigot, Marcel, another time we may be more successful.' Upon this, the viscount, the lord de la Tour, sir Robert Dauphin, sir William le Bouteiller and their companions, advanced as near to the fort as they could, carrying with them Guyot du Sel and the other prisoners. The viscount, addressing himself to Guyot as the captain, said,—'Guyot, you, as well as your friends, who are now our prisoners, must know that, unless you will surrender to us the fort of la Roche de Vandais, we shall instantly order your heads to be cut off; but, if you will yield it up, we will allow you freely to depart whither you please. Now, consider which you prefer, death or liberty.'

Guyot du Sel replied, 'My lord, I will do all I can to accommodate you,' and with this he advanced to the barriers to speak with those within the fort. You must know, that the remaining garrison looked on themselves as conquered; for they knew not how to act, nor whom to choose for their leader, since they had now lost their two captains, the most able among them,

Guyot

Guyot du Sel had not sooner explained his situation than they agreed to surrender on the terms, that they should carry away with them all they were able, and be allowed one month to retire whither they pleased. This was instantly agreed to, and written and signed. The French, by the fortunate issue of the skirmish, became masters of la Roche de Vandais: so true is it, that good or ill fortune in arms is the lot of perseverance.

The whole country was much rejoiced on hearing of this surrender. The articles of the treaty with Guyot du Sel were punctually observed, and when the garrison had packed up all they could carry, they had permission to depart, and passports given them, to continue for one month.

The viscount de Meaux and his knights abandoned la Roche de Vandais to the country people, who instantly set about demolishing it, and never left it until there did not remain one stone on another. The men at arms from Auvergne, who had joined the viscount, now took leave of him, and returned to their homes. The viscount permitted many of his own men to depart for Picardy: he himself went for la Rochelle, but stopped at Saint Jean d'Angely, to defend that part of Saintonge against pillagers, who, whenever they found a good opportunity, overran it, for his orders were to oppose them.

## CHAP. XVI.

THE MESSENGERS FROM ENGLAND, HEARING  
OF THE SURRENDER OF LA ROCHE DE VANDAIS, TAKE LEAVE OF THE DUKE OF BERRY.  
—AYMERIGOT RETIRES TO THE HOUSE OF  
A RELATION, CALLED TOURNEMINE, WHO BE-  
TRÄYS HIM TO THE KING OF FRANCE.—  
HE IS CARRIED TO PARIS, AND THERE BE-  
HEADED AND HIS BODY QUARTERED.

YOU have heard how la Roche de Vandais was won, to the contentment of the surrounding country, for, had it been otherwise, it would have suffered much from the garrison. News of this was carried to the duke of Berry at Cantelon, a manor of his situated between Chartres and Mont-lehery, nine leagues from Paris; but he was indifferent about the matter, for he was become quite cool in regard to soliciting the king in favour of Aymerigot Marcel.

When Derby the herald heard of the surrender from the duke's knights, he said to Cherbury, 'I have lost one hundred francs, which Aymerigot had promised me.' 'For what? and how have you lost them?' asked the squire. 'In God's name,' said Derby, 'la Roche de Vandais has surrendered: the French have conquered it. Let us take leave of the duke of Berry and return to England, for we have nothing further to do here.'

Since

‘ Since it is so,’ answered the squire, ‘ I agree to it.’ They demanded leave of the duke to depart, who granted it, and gave them letters, to the king of England and the duke of Lancaster, in answer to those they had brought. On their departure, he presented the herald with forty francs, and gave to the squire a handsome hackney.

On quitting the duke, they took the shortest road to Calais, and, I believe, went straight to England.

News of the loss of this fort was carried to Aymerigot Marcel, as he was raising troops to break up the siege. When he first heard it, he would have all the particulars told him. On learning that it had been occasioned by an imprudent sally Guyot du Sel had made on the French, he exclaimed,—‘ Ah, the old traitor! by Saint Marcel, if I had him here, I would slay him. He has disgraced me and all my companions. On my departure, I had most positively ordered him not to quit the fort, whatever attempts the French might make, and he has done just the contrary. This loss can never be recovered; nor do I know whither to make my retreat. The garrisons of Chaluçet and Donzac are determined to abide by the truce, and my companions are scattered abroad like discomfited persons; but, if they were with me, I know not whither I could lead them. Considering all things, I am in a distressing situation: I have too greatly angered the king of France, the duke of Berry, and the barons and

commonalty of Auvergne, to expect any favour; for I have made war on them during the truce, thinking to gain, but I am now more likely to lose every thing: I know not how to act. I wish at this moment that my wife, myself and fortune were in England; we there should be safe; but how the devil are we to get thither? for I shall be robbed of my wealth twenty times before I can arrive at the sea-shore. All the roads through Poitou, Normandy and Picardy, that lead to the sea, are well guarded. I have forfeited my life; that is clear; and, if I am taken and sent to Paris, shall be punished accordingly, and lose my all. My safest plan will be to make for Bordeaux, and to have my wealth sent thither by little and little, and then to remain there as long as the truce holds; for I am in hopes that, after these truces, a curse on them! the war will be renewed with more vigour than ever between France and England. The free companions will, by that time, have spent their former gains, and be eager to replenish their purses.'

Thus did Aymerigot Marcel converse with himself: he was cast down and sorrowful, and knew not from whom to ask advice, nor whether to return to Auvergne, or go to Bordeaux and send for his wife, and have his fortune brought thither by little at a time. If he had followed this plan, he would have done well; but he acted otherwise, and, as the event will shew, suffered for it. It is thus Fortune treats her favourites: when she has raised them to the highest point of her wheel,

she

she suddenly plunges them in the dirt: witness Aymerigot Marcel. The foolish fellow was worth, as was believed in Auvergne, more than one hundred thousand francs in money, which he lost in one day, together with his life. I therefore say, that dame Fortune played him one of her tricks, which she had played to several before, and she will do the same to many after him.

Aymerigot, in his tribulations, bethought himself of a cousin-german he had in Auvergne, a squire called Tournemine, to whom he resolved to apply, and ask his advice. This he did, and, only attended by a page, entered the castle of his cousin. He thought to be well received there, on account of his relationship, but was disappointed; for this squire was not in the good graces of the duke of Berry, who indeed hated him, as the squire knew well. He was afraid of the consequences, and resolved, on seeing his cousin Aymerigot enter his castle, to arrest him and inform the duke of Berry what he had done, and offer, if he would forgive him and be on good terms for the future, to deliver up Aymerigot Marcel, for him to do with him as he should please. All this he executed; for, when Aymerigot entered the castle, he was shewn into a chamber, when, having pulled off his sword and cleaned himself, he asked the servants, 'Where is my cousin Tournemine?' 'He is in his chamber,' replied the servants, who already knew their master's design: 'come and see him.' 'With all my heart,' said Aymerigot. Having put on a new dress, and laid aside his coat

of mail, which he usually wore, he said to the servants, ‘ Come, let us go to my cousin Tournemine, for it is a long time since I have seen him.’

They conducted him straight to his chamber, and, on entering it, Aymerigot saluted him, suspecting no evil: but Tournemine said,—‘ How is this, Aymerigot? Who has sent for you? and what has brought you hither? You wish to dis honour me. I therefore arrest you as my prisoner; for I should not otherwise loyally acquit myself to the crown of France, nor to my lord of Berry: you are a wicked traitor, who have broken the truce, and shall suffer for it: it is on your account the duke of Berry hates me mortally, but, through your means, I will make my peace; for, dead or alive, you shall be given up to him, and never, on any other account, shall you leave this castle.’

This speech astonished Aymerigot, who replied,—‘ Why, Tournemine, I am your cousin. Are you in earnest in what you say? or do you do it to try me? I came hither, in full confidence, to see you and ask your advice, and I meet with this cruel and harsh reception.’ ‘ I know not what you proposed for yourself,’ answered Tournemine, ‘ but I shall certainly execute what I have intimated to you,’ and then laid hands on him; his servants, who knew what they were to do, advanced and seized him. Thus was Aymerigot taken without a possibility of making any defence; for, as I have said, he had disarmed himself; nor could any entreaties prevent Tournemine from ordering

ordering him heavy fetters on his legs, and causing him to be confined in a strong tower under safeguards.

When this was done, he had the gates of the castle locked, taking himself the keys, ordering his servants, under pain of death, not to go near the gates unless sent by him. He then wrote letters to the duke of Berry, to say he had made Aymerigot Marcel his prisoner; and if he would forgive him and make a solid peace, he would give him up to his pleasure. When the letters were finished and sealed, he called to him his most confidential servant, and said,—‘ Set out instantly for Paris, and deliver these letters to the duke of Berry: recommend me to him, and be sure not to return without answers.’ The varlet took the letters, mounted an active horse, and rode to Paris, where the duke of Berry was. On being admitted, he presented the letters from his master, Tournemine. The duke, having opened and read them, said smiling to his knights,—‘ Would you like to hear news? Aymerigot Marcel is caught: his cousin-german Tournemine, as he writes me word, holds him in prison.’ The knights replied, —‘ My lord, this is excellent news for Auvergne and Limousin; for they have had, for a long time, a bad neighbour in Aymerigot. He has done so much mischief that, if you please, he shall make his end on a gibbet, for he deserves no favour nor pardon.’ ‘ I know not,’ said the duke, ‘ what the king or his council may wish [to do with him: I shall talk with them on the subject.’

Not long after this conversation, the duke took boat and crossed the Seine to the Louvre, where the king and his council were. He related the intelligence he had received, and gave them the letters of Tournemine to read, which afforded satisfaction to all. The lords said, that such pillagers always came to a disgraceful death, and that sooner or later it awaited them. It was determined, that the duke of Berry should undertake the management of this business, and order the sénéchal of Auvergne to fetch Aymerigot, and bring him to Paris, where he should be confined in the Bastille, at the gate of St. Anthony, and delivered over to the provost of the Châtelet, who would take good care of him. It was also resolved, that on account of the agreeable service Tournemine had now done to the crown of France, all his former misdeeds should be forgiven, and a pardon granted by letters patent, which Tournemine's servant brought back with him, and by it pleased his master greatly, for in them he confided.

It was not long before the sénéchal of Auvergne, by an order from the duke of Berry, came to the castle of Tournemine, and had Aymerigot Marcel delivered up to him: who was thunderstruck at thus finding himself in the hands of his enemies. Why should I make a long story of it? The sénéchal had him escorted by a body of men at arms through the country, and crossed the Seine and Marne at Charenton. Thence he conducted him to the castle of the Bastille, and delivered him

him to the charge of the viscount d'Achy, who was at that time governor of it.

He was not long detained there, but given up to the provost of the Châtelet, who carried him thither. True it is, that he offered sixty thousand francs for his pardon, but no one would have any thing to do with him: they told him the king was rich enough, and wanted not his money.

From the time he was delivered to the provost, there was no delay in his trial, when he was condemned to a shameful death, as a traitor to the crown of France.

He was first carried in a cart to the pillory in the market-place, and turned round within it several times. His different crimes were then read aloud, for which he was to receive death. Sir William le Trun\* was by his side a long time, and talked much with him, on the affairs of Auvergne as it was supposed, and to learn the truth respecting several captains of forts, whether they had been associates in his wickedness. This was certainly known to the lords, but I never could gain information respecting it. His head was cut off, and his four quarters affixed over four different gates of Paris. Such was the end of Aymerigot Marcel; but I know not what became of his wife, or of his wealth.

---

\* In the MSS. it is sir William le Bouteiller, which I should think more probable.

## CHAP. XVII.

THE CHRISTIAN LORDS WEIGH ANCHOR, AND  
LEAVE THE ISLAND OF COMINO, IN ORDER  
TO LAY SIEGE TO THE TOWN OF AFRICA.—  
THE MANNER IN WHICH THEY CONDUCT  
THEMSELVES.

I HAVE dwelt very long on the subject of Aymerigot Marcel, in detailing his actions, that I might illustrate his life and death; for in such a history as this, both good and bad must be spoken of, that they may serve as an excitement or warning in times to come. Had Aymerigot turned his mind to virtue, he would have done much good, for he was an able man at arms and of great courage; but, having acted in a different manner, he came to a disgraceful death.

We will return to the noble enterprise the knights of France and other countries had undertaken against Africa, and continue our narrative from the place where we left off. It was, I believe, at the island of Comino that the knights had assembled, after the great storm in the gulph of Lyon, to wait for those who had separated from the fleet, as that island was but thirty miles from Africa, whither they were bound. They remained there nine days, and, when recovered from their fatigues, they addressed the masters of the galleys as follows: ' Gentlemen, we are now on

on the nearest land to the strong town of Africa, whither if it please God, we will go, and besiege it. We must therefore consult with you how we may enter the harbour and disembark. We propose to send in advance our smaller vessels, called brigandines, to amuse the enemy, while we remain at the mouth of the harbour: on the following day we will, at our leisure, land, through God's grace, and encamp ourselves as near the town as possible, out of the reach of their bricolles\*: the Genoese cross-bows shall be drawn up, and ready for defence or attack. We suppose that, on our debarkation, a multitude of your young squires will demand to be knighted, for increase of honour and advancement: Instruct them gently how they ought to act, for you are very capable of doing it; and know, gentlemen, that we are well inclined to acquit ourselves handsomely towards you; and, to shew our eagerness to annoy the enemy, we shall take every possible pains that this town of Africa may be won. It has done you too great damage to be longer endured, and is, beside, the key of the empire of Barbary and the surrounding kingdoms of Africa, Morocco and Bugia. Should God, of his goodness, permit us to conquer it, all the Saracens will tremble, as far as Nubia and Syria, and we shall be every where talked of. With the assistance of the princes of Christendom, who are the nearest to us, we may reinforce it with

---

\* Bricolles,—machines to throw stones: a sort of sling.—DANGER.

men,

men, and victual it again; so that, if once we gain possession, it will become a place for all knights and squires to adventure themselves in arms against the enemies of God, and conquer their lands.'

' My lords,' replied the masters of the vessels, ' we shall never pretend to teach you how to act, but give our opinions with all modesty and humility; for you are too noble, wise and valiant, for us to pretend to lay down rules for your conduct.' The lord de Coucy said,—' We should, however, wish to have your opinions, for we have observed nothing but what is praise-worthy in you; and, as it is you who have brought us hither, to accomplish deeds of arms, we shall never act without having your advice.

Such were the conversations held in the island of Comino, in the presence of the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Eu, and some of the great barons of France, with the captains of the Genoese vessels, before they sailed for the coast of Africa.

When all was ready, and the men at arms had re-imbarked on board their galleys, with a good will to meet their enemies the Saracens, the admiral gave orders for the trumpets to sound, and the fleet to get under weigh. The sea was now calm, and the weather fine: it was a pleasure to see the rowers force their vessels through its smooth surface, which seemed to delight in bearing these Christians to the shores of the infidels. Their fleet was numerous and well ordered; and it was a fine sight to view their various banners and

and pennons, emblazoned with their arms, fluttering with the gentle gales, and glittering in the sun.

Late in the evening, the Christians saw the towers of Africa, as pointed out to them by the sailors, which, as they advanced, opened more to their view. Every one was rejoiced at this sight, and not without cause, as they had in part accomplished the object of their voyage. If the Christians, on thus seeing Africa, conversed much concerning the war they were about to commence, the Saracens, who had as plainly observed them from their town, and were on the watch, did the same. They were astonished at the great number of vessels, of all descriptions, and concluded they had a very large army on board, to besiege the town. They were not cast down with this, for they knew the place was strong, well fortified with towers, and plentifully stored with artillery and provisions.

On their first noticing the fleet, they sounded, according to custom, a number of bells on the towers, to alarm and inform the country that an enemy was on the coast. There were encamped near the town a large body of barbarians and infidels, whom the kings of Tunis and Bugia had sent thither to defend the coast, and prevent the Christians from making any progress into the interior of the country.

The noise of the trumpets and drums announced to them the arrival of the Christians; and, in consequence, they formed their army according

to their manner, and sent some of the ablest captains to the shore to observe the motions of the enemy, and the manner of their debarkation. They also posted their most expert men at arms on the towers and battlements of the town, that they might not be taken by surprise; for it was strong enough to resist every thing but a long siege, if they were on their guard.

As I, John Froissart, the author of these chronicles, was never in Africa, I sought all the information I could from those knights and squires who had been on this expedition, and made several journeys to Calais to learn the truth of all that had passed\*. [Having inquired as to the size and form of the town of Africa, some who had been there figured it out to me, and said it was in the form of a bow, like to Calais, extending its arms towards the sea. This town of Africa, at the time the lords of France and other nations were before it with an anxious desire to win it, was wonderfully strong, surrounded with high walls at proper distances: the entrance of the harbour was defended by a tower larger than the rest, on which was placed a bricole to cast large stones and quartels, with which it was well provided.

When the Christians approached the harbour, the walls of the town seemed to be hung with cloths or tapestry, somewhat similar in appearance

---

\* All within these marks [ ] is additional matter, omitted by Sauvage and Verard, from MS. No. 4379, Bib. Harl. in the Museum, and from a MS. in the Hafod Library, which is precisely the same.

to coverlids of beds. They cast anchor about one league distant from the port, where they remained until the morrow. The night was clear and serene, for it was the month of July, about Magdalene-tide; and they made themselves comfortable, rejoicing that, through God's pleasure, they had so far succeeded as to have the town of Africa now before them.

The Saracens, who were on the opposite shore observing the Christian fleet, held this night a council on their future mode of proceeding, for they knew the town would be besieged. They thus conversed among themselves: Our enemies are now arrived: they will, if they can, land and lay siege to Africa, which is the key to the adjoining kingdoms. We must, therefore, consider well our plans for opposing them; otherwise we shall be greatly blamed, and especially if we should not at the first dispute their landing. It was proposed by a valiant Saracen, called Mandifer, to resist their landing, as being the most honourable, and to oppose them instantly with their whole force, or they would probably have fault found with them. This was strongly supported by many, as it seemed the most courageous plan; when an ancient Saracen began to speak, who had great influence among them, as he shewed. This lord came from a town in Africa called Maldages, and his name was Bellius. He gave his opinion quite contrary to that of Mandifer, and supported it with the following reasons:—Gentlemen, we are sent hither to guard the coast and defend this

country;

country; but we have had no orders from the kings of Tunis or of Bugia to attack our enemies without having maturely considered the consequences. What I have to propose, I will maintain by such reasons as these: First, you must suppose that this army of Christians has been long in preparation, and is provided with all things necessary. Their captains, you may also believe, are perfect men at arms, as able in council as in the field, with the greatest ardour to perform deeds of arms. If we meet them on the shore, they will advance their Genoese cross-bows, for you may be assured they have brought numbers of them. It will be against them who have such excellent cross-bows that we must support the first attack; and we are not armed nor have we shields to guard us against their arrows: our men, finding themselves wounded, will draw back and refuse the combat, so that these Genoese will make good their landing in spite of us. Their men at arms, desirous of displaying their courage, will leap from their boats, and, observing our disorder, will attack us with lances, and gain a victory: should this happen, the town of Africa is irrecoverably lost for any thing we can do to prevent it. Those within will be so much discouraged by our defeat, that before our men can be rallied, the place will be taken by storm or capitulation, and be so well guarded that we shall have the greatest difficulty to regain it. The French, and those with them, are very expert and subtle in arms. I therefore maintain, that it will be more to our advantage that the enemy should

should be ignorant of our force at the onset ; for at this moment we have not a sufficiency to offer them battle, though our strength is daily increasing. I advise, that we suffer them to disembark at their ~~safe~~ ; for, as they have no horses to advance into the country, they will remain where they land suspicious of our intentions.] The town of Africa is not afraid of them, nor of their attacks, for it is tolerably strong, and well provided with every thing. The air is now warm, and will be hotter. They will be exposed to the heat of the sun, while we shall be in the shade. Their provisions will be destroyed, without hopes of having a supply, if they make any long stay, and we shall have abundance from our own country : we will frequently beat up their quarters ; and, should they be unfortunate in these skirmishes, they will be worn down. We must avoid all general engagements, otherwise we cannot conquer them ; but we shall do it by this plan, and trusting to the climate, which is so contrary to the nature of their constitutions. [They will not have any reinforcements, and we shall have many. The extreme heat of the sun, and the fatigue they will undergo from being always armed in fear of us, will very soon bring on disorders which will carry numbers to the grave, and thus shall we be revenged without striking a blow.] Such is the plan I propose ; and, if I knew of any better, I would lay it before you.'

All those in the council who had been used to arms adopted the advice the old Saracen lord had given. It was in consequence forbidden, under

pain of death, for the army to attack or skirmish with the Christians on the sea-shore, but they were ordered to remain quietly in their quarters, and suffer them to land and encamp themselves without any opposition. None dared infringe these orders. They sent a body of their archers into the town of Africa, to assist in its defence, and never made any movement until the morrow, so that the country seemed uninhabited.

The Christians having lain this night, as I have said, at anchor at the mouth of the harbour, made themselves ready the next day, which was a clear bright morning, for approaching the town, being very desirous to land. Trumpets and clarions began to sound and make a loud noise on board the different galleys and ships. When it was about nine o'clock, and the Christians had drank a cup, and partaken of soup made of Grecian or Malmsey wines, with which they had abundantly provided themselves, to cheer their hearts and raise their spirits, they began to execute the plan they had laid down while at the island of Comino. They sent, as it seems to me, some light vessels called brigandines, armed with bricolles and canons, first towards the harbour. When they were properly drawn up in array, they entered the haven, and saluted the town with arrows and stones; but the walls were hung with wet carpeting to deaden their blows. These brigandines entered the port without damage, and were followed by the galleys and other vessels in such handsome order as to make a pleasant show.

In

In turning into the harbour, there was a large castle with towers, and on one larger than the rest was placed a bricolle, for the defence of the place, which was not idle, but threw quarrels among the fleet. On each of the towers on the walls was a bricolle which shot well; and, to say the truth, the Saracens had laid in stores for a long time, from the expectation of a siege.

When the Christians entered the port of Africa, to disembark, the weather was so beautiful, and their order so well preserved, that it was delightful to see it. Their trumpets and clarions made the air resound, and were echoed back by the waves. Many knights both from France and from other countries now displayed their banners, and several knights were created. The first of whom was John lord de Ligny, in Hainault: he was knighted by his cousin, sir Henry d'Antoing; and the lord de Ligny there first displayed his banner, which was emblazoned with his arms on a field or, having a bend gules. He was accompanied by his cousin-german, the lord d'Havreth in Hainault.

All the knights and squires disembarked in view of the Saracens, on a Wednesday, the vigil of Magdalen-day \*, in the year of grace 1390, and as they landed, encamped according to orders from the marshals. Thus they took possession of the land of their enemies, who, noticing their camp, could not avoid highly praising the good

---

\* Magdalen-day,—the 22d July.

order of it. Those in the larger galleys, that could not lie near the shore, were put into boats and conveyed to land, under the banner of our Lady.

The Saracens, both within and without the town, allowed them to land peaceably, for they were not in numbers sufficient to oppose them: and the French advanced with displayed banners, on which were emblazoned their arms, to the places marked out for their lodgings by the marshals.

The duke of Bourbon, as commander in chief, was lodged in the centre of his army, with all honour, and powerfully guarded. The device on his banner, powdered over with flower de lutes, was a figure of the Virgin Mary in white, seated in the centre, and an escutcheon of Bourbon at her feet.

I will name those lords of rank who were quartered on the right of the duke, looking towards the town: first, sir William de la Trimouille and his brother with a pennon; the lord de Bordenay, with a banner; sir Helion de Lignac, with a pennon; the lord de Tours, the same. Then were placed the Hainaulters, whose standard bore the device of the lord William of Hainault, at that time count d'Ostrevant, eldest son of duke Albert of Bavaria, count of Holland, Hainault and Zealand, which device was a harrow or, on a field gules. There were the lord d'Havreth, with his banner; the lord de Ligny, with his; and then the lord Philip, count d'Artois, with his banner; the lord de Mathefion, with his banner; the lord de Calan, with a pennon:

pennon: the sénéchal d'Eu, with the same; the lord de Linières, with a banner; the lord de Thim, with the same; the lord d'Ameval, with the same; sir Walter de Chastillon, with a pennon; sir John de Châteaumorant, with a banner; the brother to the marshal de Sancerre, with a pennon; the lord de Coucy, with his banner, and better supported than any, except the duke of Bourbon; the lord de Licques, with a pennon; sir Stephen de Sancerre, with the same; and then the pennon of the king of France, blazoned with his device: beside it, was sir John le Barrois, with his pennon ornamented with his arms; sir William Morles, with his banner; the lord de Longueval, with a pennon; sir John de Roye, with a banner; the lord de Bourys, with a pennon; the viscount d'Ausnay, a banner; and sir John de Vienne, admiral of France, with his banner.

Those on the left hand of the duke of Bourbon, were the lord d'Ausemont, with a banner; sir John Beaufort, bastard to the duke of Lancaster, a banner; sir John le Bouteiller, an Englishman, a pennon; sir John de Crama, a banner; the soul-dich de l'Estrade, a pennon; sir John de Harcourt, a banner; the lord Berald, count de Clermont, and dauphin of Auvergne, a banner, and with good array; sir Hugh Dauphin, his brother, a pennon; the lord de Berthencourt, a pennon; the lord de Pierre Buffiere, a banner; the lord de Saint Semere, a banner; the lord de Louvart, marshal of the army, a pennon; the begue de

Beaufle, a pennon ; the lord de Louvy, a banner ; sir Gerard de Louvy, his brother, a pennon ; the lord de Saint-Germain, a banner ; and then the pennon on a standard, with the device of the duke of Bourbon ; the lord Philip de Bar, a banner ; sir Lewis de Poitiers, a pennon ; sir Robert de Calobre the same ; the viscount de Les, a banner ; the lord de Nogent, the same ; the lord de Ville-neuve, a pennon ; sir William de Moulin, the same ; the lord de Longwy, a pennon ; sir Angoget d'Amboise, the same ; sir Alain de la Champaigne, a pennon.

All these banners and pennons that I have named were placed in front of the camp, facing the town of Africa ; but there were many knights and squires, of great courage and ability, who were quartered in the fields, whom I cannot name, and, if I could, it would take up too much place, for they were, in the whole, fourteen thousand, all gentlemen. This was a handsome army, able to perform many gallant deeds, and support a hard warfare, if the Saracens had ventured an attack, which they did not, contenting themselves this day with throwing large bolts, not meaning to act contrary to their plan.

When the Christians were encamped, it was necessary for them to be careful of the provision they had brought, for they could not now venture to forage in this country, nor collect wood nor boughs for huts, as they would have run many risks, by foolishly venturing themselves for such objects.

The knights were lodged under tents and pavilions

vilions of cloth, which they had procured at Genoa. The Genoese cross-bows formed two wings, inclosing within them the principal lords, and, from their numbers, they occupied a great deal of ground, turning towards the sea-shore. All their provision was on board the vessels, and there were boats continually employed in bringing different articles from them, as they were wanted.

When the inhabitants of the neighbouring islands, such as Sicily and others, as well as those in the kingdom of Naples, la Puglia and Calabria, heard the Christians were laying siege to Africa, they exerted themselves to supply them with every sort of provision; some from a desire of gain, others from affection to the Genoese. From Candia were brought good sweet wine and grenaches\*, to comfort and refresh them, without which they could not long have supported their fatigues. They were a very large body of men, who daily consumed much in eating and drinking. However, these purveyances did not come regularly; for at times the supply was most abundant, at others, they were in great distress from want.

---

\* Grenaches. One of our ancient poets of the fourteenth century mentions, under the year 1315, Greek wine and wine de Grenache. This last, which, since Roussillon has formed part of France, is become a national wine, was then esteemed a foreign wine. It is probably that which Froissart calls Galvache, Garnache, or Galrigache.—*Vie Privée des François*, vol. iii.

## CHAP. XVIII.

THE CONDUCT OF THE SARACENS DURING THE SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF AFRICA.—THEY SEND TO DEMAND FROM THE FRENCH THE CAUSE OF THEIR MAKING WAR AGAINST THEM.

I WILL say something of the Saracens, for it is but just they should be equally spoken of as the Christians, that the truth may be more apparent. You must know that these infidels had, for a long time, been menaced by the Genoese, and were expecting the town of Africa to be besieged, in which they were not disappointed. They had made preparations for resistance, when they heard of the arrival of the Christian fleet, an event that had been long looked for by the neighbouring nations; for they are not prudent nor well advised, who fear not their enemies, however small they may be. The Saracens, however, do not hold the Christians cheap: on the contrary, they consider them as men of courage and enterprise, and much fear them.

The better to resist their enemies, they assembled the most experienced warriors from the kingdoms of Bugia, Morocco and Tunis, in which last the town of Africa is situated, and encamped on the downs near the sea shore. They took advantage of a large and thick wood in their rear,

to

to avoid any danger from ambuscades or skirmishes on that side.

The Saracens shewed much ability in thus posting themselves. They amounted, according to the estimate of able men at arms, to thirty thousand archers and ten thousand horse. Others thought they were more; but their exact numbers were unknown, for the Christians supposed many were lodged in the wood. They were very numerous, for they were in their own country, and could come and go from their army at their pleasure without danger. They received continual supplies of fresh provision, that was brought on the backs of camels.

The second day after the Christians had landed, the Saracens, about dawn, came to attack the camp, sir Henry d'Antoing having the command of the guard of two hundred men at arms and one thousand Genoese cross-bows. The skirmish lasted better than two hours, and many gallant deeds were done in shooting and thrusting the lance, for there was not any engagement with the sword hand to hand. The Saracens did not fool hardly risk themselves, but fought with valour and more prudence than the Christians.

When they had skirmished some time, the Saracens retreated; for the army began to be in motion, and some of the French barons had come to witness the action, and observe the manner of their enemies fighting, that they might be prepared to meet them another time. The Saracens retired to their camp, as did the Christians to theirs;

theirs ; but, during the whole time of this siege of Africa, the Christians were never left quiet, for their camp was every night or morning attacked by the enemy.

Among the Saracens was a young knight, called Agadinqaor Oliferne, excellently mounted on a beautiful courser, which he managed as he willed, and which, when he galloped, seemed to fly with him. From his gallantry, he shewed he was a good man at arms ; and, when he rode abroad, he had with him three javelins, well feathered, which he dexterously flung, according to the custom of his country. He was completely armed in black, and had a kind of white napkin wrapped round his head. His seat on horseback was graceful ; and, from the vigour and gallantry of his actions, the Christians judged he was excited thereto by his affection to a young lady of the country. True it is, he most sincerely loved the daughter of the king of Tunis, who, according to the report of some Genoese merchants who had seen her, was very handsome, and the heiress of his kingdom. This knight, called Agadinqor, was the son of duke Oliferne ; but I know not if he ever married this lady. I heard that, during the siege, he performed many handsome feats of arms, to testify his love, which the French knights saw with pleasure, and would willingly have surrounded him ; but, he rode with such activity and skill, that all their efforts were vain.

The Christian lords were very anxious to make some Saracens prisoners, to learn from them the real

real state of their army ; but they were so cautious, that they could not succeed, and, having noticed their intent, the Saracen chiefs gave orders accordingly. The Saracens were much afraid of the Genoese cross-bows : they shielded themselves as well as they could against their bolts, but they are not armed so strongly as the Christians ; for they know not the art to forge armour like theirs, nor have they workmen who could make such. Iron and steel are not common among them ; and they wear light targets hanging on their necks, covered with boiled leather from Capadocia, that no spear can penetrate, if the leather has not been overboiled. Their manner of fighting, according to what I heard, was to advance on the Christians, and shoot a volley of arrows at the Genoese the moment they made their appearance, and then to fall down under shelter of their shields, by which they avoided the bolts from the cross-bows, that went over them : they then rose, and either shot more arrows, or lanced their javelins with much dexterity.

Thus for the space of nine weeks that the siege lasted were continual skirmishes made ; and on both sides many were killed and wounded, more especially such as ventured too rashly. The Christians imitated the Saracens by avoiding a close combat ; and the lords from France and other countries took delight in their manner of fighting, for, to say the truth, novelty is always pleasing. The young lords of these infidels were greatly struck with the glittering armour and emblazoned

banners

banners and pennons of their enemies, and, when returned to their camp, they conversed much about them. They were, however, astonished at one thing, which I will now relate. The Saracens within the town of Africa were anxious to know on what pretence the Christians had come with so large an army to make war on them; and, to learn the reasons, they resolved as I was told, in council, to send a person that could speak Genoese, and gave him the following orders, ‘ Go and take the road to the camp of the Christians, [and manage, before thou returnest, to speak with some lords, in their army,] and demand, in our name, why they have brought so powerful a force against us, and taken possession of the lands of the king of Africa, who has not done any thing to offend them. True it is that, in former times, we were at war with the Genoese, but that should no way concern them; for they come from very distant countries, and the Genoese are our neighbours. Our custom has been, excepting in times of truce, to seize mutually all we can from each other.’

Having received these instructions, the messenger departed and rode on to the camp. The first person he met was a Genoese, to whom he said that he was sent by the Saracens to speak with some baron from France. The Genoese, to whom he had addressed himself, was called Antonio Marchi, a centurion of cross-bows, who took him under his care, to his great joy, and conducted him instantly to the duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy. They both listened very attentively,

tively, and what they did not understand the centurion interpreted in very good French.

When he had finished all he had been ordered to say, he asked for an answer. The French lords told him he should have one as soon as they had considered the purport of his message. Twelve of the greatest barons of the army assembled in the duke of Bourbon's tent, and the messenger and interpreter being called in, the last was ordered to tell him from the lords present, 'that in consequence of their ancestors having crucified and put to death the Son of God, called JESUS CHRIST, a true prophet, without any cause or just reason, they were come to retaliate on them for this infamous and unjust judgment. Secondly, they were unbaptised, and infidels in the faith to the holy Virgin, mother of JESUS CHRIST, and had no creed of their own. For these and other causes, they held the Saracens and their whole fleet as enemies, and were come to revenge the injuries they had done to their God and faith, and would to this effect daily exert themselves to the utmost of their power.'

When the messenger had received this answer, he departed from the army unmolested, and returned to report to his masters what you have just read. The Saracens laughed heartily at hearing it, and said, they made assertions without proofs, for it was the Jews who had crucified JESUS CHRIST, and not them. Things remained on the former footing: the siege was continued, and each army on its guard.

## CHAP. XIX.

SOME MIRACLES ARE SHEWN TO THE SARACENS,  
 AS THEY ATTEMPT TO ATTACK THE CAMP  
 OF THE CHRISTIANS.—SEVERAL SKIRMISHES  
 DURING THE SIEGE.—THE CLIMATE BECOMES  
 UNWHOLESOME, AND OTHER ACCIDENTS BE-  
 FAL THE BESIEGERS.

SHORTLY after this message, the Saracens determined in council to remain quiet for seven or eight days, and, during that time, neither to skirmish nor any way to annoy the Christians, but, when they should think themselves in perfect security, to fall on their camp like a deluge. This was adopted ; and the ninth evening, a little before midnight, they secretly armed their men with their accustomed arms, and marched silently in a compact body towards the Christian camp. They had proposed making a severe attack on the opposite quarter to the main guard, and would have succeeded in their mischievous attempt, if God had not watched over and preserved them by miracles as I will now relate.

As the Saracens approached, they saw before them a company of ladies dressed in white ; one of whom, their leader, was incomparably more beautiful than the rest, and bore in front a white flag having a vermilion cross in the centre. The Saracens were so greatly terrified at this vision, that they lost all their strength and inclination to

pro-

proceed, and stood still, these ladies keeping steadily before them: The Genoese cross-bows had brought with them a dog, as I heard, from beyond sea, but whence no one could tell, nor did he belong to any particular person. This dog had been very useful to them; for the Saracens never came to skirmish, but by his noise he awakened the army, and as every one now knew that whenever the dog barked the Saracens were come, or on their road, they prepared themselves instantly: in consequence of this, the Genoese called him the dog of our Lady. This night, the dog was not idle, but made a louder noise than usual, and ran first to the main guard, which was under the command of the lord de Torcy, a Normand, and sir Henry d'Antoing. As during the night all sounds are more easily heard, the whole army was in motion, and properly prepared to receive the Saracens, who they knew were approaching.

This was the fact; but the Virgin Mary and her company, having the Christians under their care, watched over them; and this night they received no harm, for the Saracens were afraid to advance, and returned the way they had come. The Christians were more attentive to their future guards. The saracen knights and squires, within the town, were much cast down at the sight they had seen, more especially those who were advanced near this company of ladies. While, on the other hand, the Christians were greatly exerting themselves to win the place, which was courageously defended. At this period, the weather was

was exceedingly hot; for it was the month of August, when the sun is in its greatest force, and that country was warmer than France, from being nearer the sun, and from the heat of the sands. The wines the besiegers were supplied with from la Puglia and Calabria were fiery, and hurtful to the constitutions of the French, many of whom suffered severely by fevers, from the heating quality of their liquors. I know not how the Christians were enabled to bear the fatigues in such a climate, where sweet water was difficult to be had. They, however, had much resource in the wells they dug; for there were upwards of two hundred sunk, through the sands, along the shore; but, at times, even this water was muddy and heated. They were frequently distressed for provision, for the supply was irregular, from Sicily and the other islands: at times they had abundance, at other times they were in want. The healthy comforted the sick, and those who had provision shared it with such as had none; for in this campaign they were all as brothers.

The lord de Coucy, in particular, was beloved by every gentleman: he was kind to all, and behaved himself by far more graciously, in all respects, than the duke of Bourbon, who was proud and haughty, and never conversed with the knights and squires from foreign countries in the same agreeable manner the lord de Coucy did.

The duke was accustomed to sit cross-legged the greater part of the day before his pavilion; and those who had any thing to say to him were obliged

obliged to make many reverences, and address him through the means of a third person. He was indifferent whether the poorer knights and squires were well or ill at their ease: this the lord de Coucy always inquired into, and by it gained great popularity. It was told me, by some foreign knights who had been there, that had the lord de Coucy being commander in chief, instead of the duke of Bourbon, the success would have been very different; for many attacks on the town of Africa were frustrated by the pride and fault of the duke of Bourbon: several thought it would have been taken, if it had not been for him.

This siege lasted, by an exact account, sixty-one days; during which, many were the skirmishes before the town and at the barriers: they were well defended, for the flower of the infidel chivalry was in the town. The Christians said among themselves,—‘If we could gain this place by storm or otherwise, and strongly reinforce and victual it during the winter, a large body of our countrymen might then come hither in the spring and gain a footing in the kingdoms of Barbary and Tunis, which would encourage the Christians to cross the sea annually and extend their conquests.’ ‘Would to God it were so,’ others replied; ‘for the knights now here would then be comfortably lodged, and every day, if they pleased, they might have deeds of arms.’ The besieged were alarmed at the obstinacy of their attacks, and redoubled their guards. The great heat, however, did more for them than all the rest, added to the constant un-

certainty of being attacked ; for the policy of the Saracens was to keep them in continual alarms. They were almost burnt up when in armour ; and it was wonderful that any escaped death ; for, during the month of August, the air was suffocating.

An extraordinary accident happened, which if it had lasted any time, must have destroyed them all. During one week, from the heat and corruption of the air, there were such wonderful swarms of flies, the army was covered with them. The men knew not how to rid themselves of these troublesome guests, which multiplied daily, to their great astonishment ; but, through the grace of God and the Virgin Mary, to whom they were devoted, a remedy was found, in a thunder and hail storm, that fell with great violence, and destroyed all the flies. The air, by this storm, was much cooled, and the army got to be in better health than it had been for some time.

Knights who are on such expeditions must cheerfully put up with what weather may happen, for they cannot have it according to their wishes ; and, when any one falls sick, he must be nursed to his recovery or to his death. Although the knights from France had undertaken this voyage with an eagerness and resolution that bore them up under the pains they suffered, they had not many luxuries to gratify them ; for nothing was sent them from France, nor had any in that kingdom more intelligence from them than if they were buried under ground. Once, indeed, there came a galley from Barcelona, laden more with oranges and

and small grains than with any thing else. The oranges were of the greatest service, by the refreshment they afforded ; but, whatever vessel came to them, none returned, for fear of meeting the Saracens at sea, and because they wished to wait the event of the siege, and see whether the Christians would conquer the town.

The young king Lewis of Sicily exerted himself, in order that his subjects should carry a constant supply of provision to them, for he was their nearest neighbour. It was fortunate the Saracens were not strong enough at sea to prevent the vessels coming from the ports of Sicily and Naples, or they would have conquered them without striking a blow. They therefore contented themselves with keeping the Christians under perpetual alarms on land.

The Saracens have not a large navy like the Genoese and Venetians ; and what they get at sea is by thievery ; and they never dare wait the attack of the Christians unless they be in very superior numbers, for a well-armed galley with Christians will defeat four of such enemies. In truth, the Turks are better men at arms by sea and land than any other nation of unbelievers of our faith ; but they were at too great a distance from Africa, and the town could not receive any aid from them. The Turks had heard that the town of Africa was besieged by the Christians, and had often, but in vain, wished to have been there.

## CHAP. XX.

A CHALLENGE IS SENT BY THE SARACENS TO OFFER COMBAT OF TEN AGAINST TEN CHRISTIANS.—THE SARACENS FAIL IN THEIR ENGAGEMENT.—THE TOWN OF AFRICA IS STORMED, BUT UNSUCCESSFULLY, AND WITH THE LOSS OF MANY WORTHY MEN.

THE besiegers and their enemies studied day and night how they could most effectually annoy each other. Agadinquor Oliferne, Madifer de Tunis, Belins Maldages and Brahadin de Bugia, and some other Saracens, consulted together, and said; 'Here are our enemies the Christians encamped before us, and we cannot defeat them. They are so few in number when compared to us, that they must be well advised by their able captains; for, in all our skirmishes, we have never been able to make one knight prisoner. If we could capture one or two of their leaders, we should acquire fame, and learn from them the state of their army and what are their intentions. Let us now consider how we may accomplish this.' Agadinquor replied, 'Though I am the youngest, I wish to speak first.' 'We agree to it,' said the others. 'By my faith,' continued he, 'I am very desirous of engaging them; and I think, if I were matched in equal combat with one of my size, I should conquer him. If you will therefore select ten valiant men, I will challenge the Christians

tians to send the same number to fight with us. We have justice on our side in this war, for they have quarrelled with us without reason; and this right and the courage I feel induce me to believe that we shall have the victory.'

Madifer de Tunis, who was a very valiant man, said,—‘ Agadinquor, what you have proposed is much to your honour. To-morrow, if you please, you shall ride as our chief towards the camp of the Christians, taking an interpreter with you, and make a signal that you have something to say. If you be well received by them, propose your combat of ten against ten. We shall then hear what answer they give; and, though I believe the offer will be accepted, we must take good counsel how we proceed against these Christians, whom we consider as more valiant than ourselves.’

This being determined on, they retired to rest. On the morrow, as usual, they advanced to skirmish; but Agadinquor rode on at some distance in front with his interpreter. The day was bright and clear, and a little after sun-rise the Saracens were ready for battle. Sir Guy and sir William de la Trimouille had commanded the guard of the night, and were on the point of retiring when the Saracens appeared in sight about three bow-shots distant. Agadinquor and his interpreter advanced towards one of the wings, and made signs to give notice that he wanted to parley with some one: by accident, he came near the pennon of a good squire at arms called Affrenal, who, noticing his signs, rode forward a pace, and told his men to

remain as they were, ' for that he would go and see what the Saracen wanted : he has an interpreter with him, and is probably come to make some proposition.' His men remained steady, and he rode towards the Saracen.

When they were near each other, the interpreter said,—' Christian, are you a gentleman, of name in arms, and ready to answer what shall be asked of you ?' ' Yes,' replied Affrenal, ' I am : speak what you please, it shall be answered.'

' Well,' said the interpreter, ' here is a noble man of our country who demands to combat with you bodily ; and, if you would like to increase the number to ten, he will bring as many of his friends to meet you. The cause for the challenge is this : They maintain, that their faith is more perfect than yours ; for it has continued since the beginning of the world, when it was written down ; and that your faith has been introduced by a mortal, whom the Jews hung and crucified.' ' Ho,' interrupted Affrenal, ' be silent on these matters, for it does not become such as thee to dispute concerning them, but tell the Saracen, who has ordered thee to speak, to swear on his faith that such a combat shall take place, and he shall be gratified within four hours. Let him bring ten gentlemen, and of name in arms, on his side, and I will bring as many to meet him.'

The interpreter related to the Saracen the words that had passed, who seemed much rejoiced thereat, and pledged himself for the combat.

This

This being done, each returned to his friends ; but the news had already been carried to sir Guy and to sir William de la Trimouille, who, meeting Affrenal, demanded how he had settled matters with the Saracen. Affrenal related what you have heard, and that he had accepted the challenge. The two knights were well pleased, and said,— ‘ Affrenal, go and speak to others, for we will be of your number ten.’ He replied, God assist us ! I fancy I shall find plenty ready to fight the Saracens.’ Shortly after, Affrenal met the lord de Thim, to whom he told what had passed, and asked if he would make one. The lord de Thim willingly accepted the offer ; and of all those to whom Affrenal related it, he might, if he pleased, have had a hundred instead of ten. Sir Boucicaut, the younger, accepted it with great courage, as did sir Helion de Lignac, sir John Russel, an Englishman, sir John Harpedone, Alain Boudet and Bouchet. When the number of ten was completed, they retired to their lodgings, to prepare and arm themselves.

When the news of this combat was spread through the army, and the names of the ten were told, the knights and squires said,—‘ They are lucky fellows, thus to have such a gallant feat of arms fall to their lot.’ ‘ Would to Heaven,’ added many, ‘ that we were of the ten.’ All the knights and squires seemed to rejoice at this event, except the lord de Coucy. I believe the lord de Thim was a dependant on, or of the company of the lord de Coucy ; for, when he repaired to his

tent to arm, he found him there, and acknowledged him for his lord. He related to him the challenge of the Saracen, and that he had accepted being one of the ten. All present were loud in praise of it, except the lord de Coucy, who said, ' Hold your tongues, you youngsters, who as yet know nothing of the world, and who never consider consequences, but always applaud folly in preference to good. I see no advantage in this combat, for many reasons: one is, that ten noble and distinguished gentlemen are about to fight with ten Saracens. How do we know if their opponents are gentlemen? They may, if they choose, bring to the combat ten varlets, or knaves, and, if they are defeated, what is the gain? We shall not the sooner win the town of Africa, but by it risk very valuable lives. Perhaps they may form an ambuscade, and, while our friends are on the plain waiting for their opponents, surround them and carry them off, by which we shall be greatly weakened. I therefore say, that Affrenal has not wisely managed this matter; and, when he first met the Saracen, he should have otherwise answered, and said, ' I am not the commander in chief of our army, but one of the least in it; and you Saracen, who address yourself to me and blame our faith, are not qualified to discuss such matters, nor have you well addressed yourself. I will conduct you to my lords, and assure you, on my life, that no harm befall you in going or in returning, for my lords will cheerfully listen to you.' He should then have led him to the duke of Bourbon and the council

council of war, when his proposal would have been heard and discussed at leisure, his intentions been known, and answers made according as they should think the matter deserved. Such a combat should never be undertaken but after great deliberation, especially with enemies like to those we are engaged with. And when it had been agreed on, that the names and qualities of each combatant should be declared, we would then have selected proper persons to meet them, and proper securities would have been required from the Saracens for the uninterrupted performance of the combat, and a due observance of the articles. If matters had been thus managed, lord of Thim, I think it would have been better. It would be well if it could be put on this footing; and I will speak to the duke of Bourbon and the principal barons in the army, and hear what they shall say on the subject.

The lord de Coucy then departed for the tent of the duke of Bourbon, where the barons were assembled as they had heard of this challenge, to consider what might be the probable event of it. Although the lord de Coucy had intended his speech to the lord de Thim as advice for his benefit, he did not the less arm himself: when fully equipped, he went with his companions, who were completely armed, and in good array, with sir Guy de la Trimouille at their head, to meet the Saracens.

During this, there was conversation on the subject between the lords in the tent of the duke of Bourbon: many thought the accepting such a challenge

a challenge improper, and supported the opinion of the lord de Coucy, who said it ought to have been ordered otherwise. But some, and in particular the lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, and the lord Philip de Bar, said, ' Since the challenge has been accepted by our knights, they would be disgraced were the combat now broken off: and in the name of God and our lady, let them accomplish it the best manner they can.' This was adopted; for it was now too far advanced to be stopped. It was therefore ordered to draw out the whole army properly arrayed, that if the Saracens had formed any bad designs, they might be prepared to meet them.

Every one, therefore, made himself ready: the whole was drawn up, as if for instant combat; the Genoese cross-bows on one side, and the knights and squires on the other; each lord under his own banner or pennon emblazoned with his arms. It was a fine sight to view the army thus displayed, and they shewed great eagerness to attack the Saracens.

The ten knights and squires were advanced on the plain waiting for their opponents, but they came not, nor shewed any appearance of so doing; for, when they saw the Christian army so handsomely drawn out in battle array, they were afraid to advance though they were thrice their numbers. At times they sent horsemen, well mounted, to ride near their army, observe its disposition, and then gallop back, which was solely done through malice, to annoy the Christians.

This

This was the hottest day they felt, and it was so extremely oppressive that the most active among them were almost stifled in their armour: they had never suffered so much before, and yet they remained expecting the ten Saracens, but in vain, for they never heard a word from them. The army was ordered to attack the town of Africa, since they were prepared, and thus pass the day; and the ten champions, in regard to their honour, were to remain on their ground to the evening.

The knights and squires advanced with great alacrity to the attack of the town, but they were sorely oppressed with the heat; and had the Saracens known their situation, they might have done them much damage, probably they might even have raised the siege and obtained a complete victory, for the Christians were exceedingly weakened and worn down. True it is, they gained by storm the wall of the first inclosure; but no one inhabited that part, and the enemy retired within their second line of defence, skirmishing as they retreated, and without any great loss.

The Christians paid dear for an inconsiderable advantage: the heat of the sun and its reflection on the sands, added to the fatigue of fighting, which lasted until evening, caused the deaths of several valiant knights and squires: the more the pity.

I will mention the names of those who this day fell victims to the heat and unhealthiness of the climate. First, sir William de Gacille, sir Guiscard de la Garde, sir Lyon Scalet, sir Guy de la Salveste, sir William d'Estapelle, sir William de Guiret,

sir

sir Raffroy de la Chapelle, the lord de Pierre Buffiere, the lord de Bonnet, sir Robert de Hanges, sir Stephen de Sancerre, sir Aubert de la Motte, sir Alain de la Champaigne, sir Geoffry Sressiers, sir Raoul d'Econflan, the lord de Bourg from Artois, sir John de Crie, bastard de la Mourleraye, sir Tristan his brother, sir Arné de Consay, sir Arné de Donnay, sir John de Compaignie, sir Fouke d'Escauffours, sir John de Dignant, sir John de Cathenais.

    I will now add the names of squires who fell : Fouchans de Liege, John des Isles, Blondelet d'Arenton, John de la Motte, Blomberis, Floridas de Rocque, the lord de Bellefreres, William Fondrigay, Walter de Canfours, John Morillon, Peter de Maulves, Guillot Vilain, John de la Lande, John Purièr, John le Moine, John de Launay and William du Parc.

    Now consider how great was this loss ; and, had the advice of the gallant lord de Coucy been followed, it would not have happened, for the army would have remained quietly in its camp, as it had hitherto done. The whole army were dismayed at it, and each bewailed the loss of his friend. They retired late to their camp, and kept a stronger guard than usual, during the night, for fear of the Saracens. It passed, however, without further accident, and more prudent arrangements were made. The Saracens were ignorant of what their enemies had suffered ; had they known it, they would have had a great advantage over them, but they were in dread of the Christians, and never ventured

ventured to attack them but in skirmishes, retreating, after one or two charges. The person among them who had shewn the most courage was Aga-dinquier d'Oliferne. He was enamoured with the daughter of the king of Tunis, and, in compliment to her, was eager to perform brilliant actions.

Thus was the siege of Africa continued ; but the relations and friends of the knights and squires who had gone thither, from France and other countries, received no intelligence, nor knew more of them than if they were dead. They were so much alarmed at not having any news of them, that many processions were made in England, France and Hainault, to the churches to pray God that he would bring them back, in safety, to their several homes.

The intention of the Christians was to remain before the town of Africa, until they should have conquered it by storm, treaty or famine. The king of Sicily, as well as the inhabitants of the adjacent islands, were anxious it should be so, for the Africans had done them frequent damage ; but the Genoese were particularly kind, in supplying the knights and squires with every thing they wanted, to prevent them from being tired with the length of the campaign.

To say the truth, this was a very great enterprise, and the knights and squires shewed much courage and perseverance in continuing the siege in so unhealthy a climate, after the great losses they had suffered, without assistance from any one ; and

and even when the Genoese, who had first proposed the expedition, were dissembling with them, and as it was said, were in treaty with the Saracens, to leave the Christian army unsupported and neglected, as I shall relate in due time, according to the reports that were made to me.

We will now leave the affairs of Africa, and speak of the handsome feasts that were at this time given at London.

---

## CHAP. XXI.

### A GRAND TOURNAMENT IS HOLDEN AT LONDON.

—THE KING OF ENGLAND GIVES SPLENDID ENTERTAINMENTS DURING THE SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF AFRICA BY THE CHRISTIANS.—THE COUNT D'OSTREVANT RECEIVES THE ORDER OF THE GARTER, WHICH DISPLEASES THE KING OF FRANCE.

NEWS of the splendid feasts and entertainments made for queen Isabella's public entry into Paris was carried to many countries, and very justly, for they were most honourably conducted. The king of England and his three uncles had received the fullest information of them ; for some of his knights had been present, who had reported all that had passed with the utmost fidelity. In imitation of this, the king of England ordered grand tournaments

tournaments and feasts to be holden in the city of London, where sixty knights shuld be accompanied by sixty noble ladies, richly ornamented and dresled. The sixty knights were to tilt for two days; that is to say, on the Sunday after Michaelmas-day, and the Monday following, in the year of grace 1390.

The sixty knights were to set out at two o'clock in the afternoon from the Tower of London, with their ladies, and parade through the streets, down Cheapside, to a large square called Smithfield. There the knights were to wait on the Sunday the arrival of any foreign knights who might be desirous of tilting; and this feast of the Sunday was called the challengers. The same ceremonies were to take place on the Monday, and the sixty knights to be prepared for tilting courteously with blunted lances against all comers. The prize for the best knight of the opponents was to be a rich crown of gold, that for the tenants of the lists a very rich golden clasp: they were to be given to the most gallant tilter, according to the judgment of the ladies, who would be present with the queen of England and the great barons, as spectators.

On the Tuesday, the tournaments were to be continued by squires, against others of the same rank who wished to oppose them. The prize for the opponents was a courser saddled and bridled, and for the tenants of the lists a falcon. The manner of holding this feast being settled, heralds were sent to proclaim it throughout England, Scotland,

**Scotland, Hainault, Germany, Flanders, and France.**  
 It was ordered by the council to what parts each herald was to go ; and, having time before hand, they published it in most countries.

Many knights and squires from foreign lands made preparations to attend it : some to see the manners of the English, others to take part in the tournaments. On the feast being made known in Hainault, sir William de Hainault count d' Astre-  
 vant, who was at that time young and gallant, and fond of tilting, determined, in his own mind, to be present, and to honour and make acquaintance with his cousin, king Richard, and his uncles, whom he had never seen. He therefore engaged many knights and squires to accompany him ; in particular the lord de Gomelines, because he was well known in England, having lived there some time. Sir William resolved, while his preparations were making, to visit his father, the count of Hainault, Holland, and Zealand, to speak with him on the subject, and to take leave of him before he went to England. He therefore set out from Quesnoy, in Hainault, and continued his journey to the Hague, a good town in Holland, where his father then resided.

During the visit, he told his father his intentions to partake of the great feast in England, to see his cousins and other English lords whom he was desirous of knowing. ' William,' replied the count, ' my good son, you have nothing to do in England : you are now connected by marriage with the blood-royal of France, and your sister is the

the wife of the eldest son of our cousin the duke of Burgundy: you have no occasion, therefore, to seek other connections.' 'My lord,' answered sir William, 'I do not wish to go to England to form any alliance, but merely to tilt and enjoy this feast, which has been publicly proclaimed every where, and visit my cousins whom I have never seen. Should I not go thither, after the particular invitation I have had, for a purpose messenger brought it me, my refusal will be considered as the effect of pride and presumption. I feel myself bound therefore in honour to go, and I beg, father, that you will not refuse me your consent.' 'William,' replied the count, 'you are your own master; act as you please; but I should think, for the sake of peace, it were better you did not go.'

The count d'Ostrevant, perceiving this subject was disagreeable to his father, turned the conversation to other matters; but his resolution was fixed, and his purveyances were continued to be made and forwarded to Calais. His herald, Gomelines, was sent to England to inform the king and his uncles, that he would come honourably attended to his feast. They were much pleased at this intelligence, and presented the herald with great gifts, which were very acceptable, for he became blind towards the end of his days. I know not if he had angered God that he was afflicted with such a punishment; but this herald, when in power, had behaved with so much insolence, that he was little pitied in his distreſs.

The count d'Ostrevant took leave of his father, and, on his departure from the Hague, returned to his lady at Quesnoy. Many noble knights were busy in preparations for this feast that had been so pompously proclaimed.

The count Waleran de Saint Pol, who had married the half-sister to king Richard, assembled a handsome body of knights and squires, and with them made for Calais, where passage-vessels were waiting to convey to Dover the lords and knights going to this tournament. From Dover, they continued their journey to London, where their servants had previously secured their lodgings.

The count d'Ostrevant set out from Hainault with a numerous attendance of knights and squires, and travelled through Artois to Calais, where he met the count de St. Pol. When the wind was favourable, and their attendants embarked, they crossed the channel; but it was told me, and I believe it, that the count de St. Pol arrived first at London, where he found the king and his brother-in-law, sir John Holland, who, with many other nobles, made him a hearty welcome, and enquired the news in France.

The count d'Ostrevant having crossed the sea, stopped at Canterbury, and on the Friday morning, without breaking his fast, paid his devotions at the shrine of Thomas à Becket, making at the same time a very rich offering at that altar.

He remained that whole day at Canterbury, and on the following went to Rochester. On account of his numerous train, he travelled but a short day's

day's journey, to spare his horses that carried the baggage. After mafs, he left Rochester, and dined at Dartford, whence he continued his journey to London, for it was on this Sunday the tournaments were to begin.

This Sunday, according to proclamation, being the next to Michaelmas day, was the beginning of the tiltings, and called the feast of the challengers. About three o'clock, there paraded out from the Tower of London, which is situated in the square of St. Catherine, on the banks of the Thames, sixty barded coursers ornamented for the tournament, on each was mounted a squire of honour that advanced only at a foot's pace; then came sixty ladies of rank mounted on palfreys most elegantly and richly dressed, following each other, every one leading a knight with a silver chain completely armed for tilting; and in this procession they moved on through the streets of London, attended by numbers of minstrels and trumpets, to Smithfield. The queen of England and her ladies and damsels were already arrived and placed in chambers handsomely decorated.

The king was with the queen. When the ladies who led the knights arrived in the square, their servants were ready to assist them to dismount from their palfreys, and to conduct them to the apartments prepared for them.

The knights remained until their squires of honour had dismounted and brought them their coursers, which having mounted, they had their

helmets laced on, and prepared themselves in all points for the tilt.

The count de Saint Pol with his companions now advanced, handsomely armed for the occasion, and the tournament began. Every foreign knight who pleased tilted, or had time for so doing, before the evening set in. The tiltings were well and long continued, until night forced them to break off. The lords and ladies then retired where they had made appointments. The queen was lodged in the bishop of London's palace near St. Paul's church, where the banquet was held.

Towards evening, the count d'Ostrevant arrived, and was kindly received by king Richard and his lords. The prize for the opponents was adjudged to the count de St. Pol, as the best knight at this tournament, and that for the tenants to the earl of Huntingdon.

The dancings were at the queen's residence, in the presence of the king, his uncles and the barons of England. The ladies and damsels continued their amusements, before and after supper, until it was time to retire, when all went to their lodgings, except such as were attached to the king or queen, who, during the tournament, lived at the palace of the bishop of London.

You would have seen on the ensuing morning, Monday, squires and varlets busily employed, in different parts of London, furbishing and making ready armour and horses for their masters who were

were to engage in the jousts. In the afternoon, king Richard entered Smithfield magnificently accompanied by dukes, lords and knights, for he was chief of the tenants of the lists. The queen took her station as on the preceding day, with her ladies, in the apartments that had been prepared for her. The count d'Ostrevant came next, with a large company of knights and squires fully armed for tilting; then the count de Saint Pol and the knights from France.

The tournament now began, and every one exerted himself to the utmost to excel: many were unhorsed, and more lost their helmets. The justing continued with great courage and perseverance until night put an end to it. The company now retired to their lodgings or their homes; and, when the hour for supper was near, the lords and ladies attended it, which was splendid and well served. The prize for the opponents at the tournament was adjudged by the ladies, lords and heralds, to the count d'Ostrevant, who far eclipsed all who had tilted that day: that for the tenants was given to a gallant knight of England called sir Hugh Spenser.

On the morrow, Tuesday, the tournament was renewed by the squires, who tilted in the presence of the king, queen and all the nobles, until night, when all retired as on the preceding day. The supper was as magnificent as before at the palace of the bishop, where the king and queen lodged; and the dancing lasted until day-break, when the company broke up.

The tournament was continued on the Wednesday by all knights and squires indiscriminately, who were inclined to just: it lasted until night, and the supper and dances were as the preceding day.

On Thursday, the king entertained at supper all the foreign knights and squires, and the queen their ladies and damsels. The duke of Lancaster gave a grand dinner to them on the Friday. On Saturday, the king and his court left London for Windsor, whither the count d'Ostrevant, the count de Saint Pol, and the foreign knights who had been present at the feasts, were invited. All accepted the invitation, as was right, and went to Windsor, which has a handsome castle, well built and richly ornamented, situated on the Thames, twenty miles from London.

The entertainments were very magnificent in the dinners and suppers king Richard made, for he thought he could not pay honour enough to his cousin the count d'Ostrevant. He was solicited by the king and his uncles to be one of the companions of the order of the blue Garter, as the chapel of St. George, the patron, was at Windsor. In answer to their request, he said he would consider of it, and instantly consulted the lord de Gomegines and the bastard Fierabras de Vertain, who were far from discouraging him from accepting the order. He returned to the king, and was admitted a knight-companion of the Garter, to the great surprise of the French knights then present. They murmured together, and said,—“This count d'Ostrevant

d'Ostrevant plainly shews that his heart is more inclined to England than France, when he thus accepts the order of the Garter, which is the device of the kings of England. He is purchasing the ill will of the court of France and of my lord of Burgundy, whose daughter he has married, and a time may come for him to repent of it. However, to say the truth, he must know what concerns him best: but he was well beloved by the king of France, his brother the duke of Touraine and all the royal family; so that, when he came to them at Paris or elsewhere, they shewed him more kindness than to any other of their cousins.'

Thus was the count d'Ostrevant blamed by the French without the smallest cause; for what he had done was no way to injure the crown of France, nor his cousins and friends of that country. Nothing was farther from his mind than any hostility to the king of France; but he had accepted the Garter to oblige his cousins in England, and on occasion to be a mediator between the two countries. When he took the oaths usual on the admission of knights to the order, it ought to be known publicly that nothing was said or done prejudicial to France, nor any treaties entered into with that intent. I mention this, since it is impossible to prevent the envious from spreading abroad their tales.

When the entertainments at Windsor had lasted a sufficient time, and the king had made handsome presents to the knights and squires of France, particularly to the young count d'Ostre-

vant, the company took leave of the king, the queen, and the court, and departed for their different homes.

Rumour, which magnifies every thing, carried to the king of France, his brother and uncles, every particular that had passed at this feast in England. Those who had been there confirmed it, nothing was forgotten, but rather additions made, with the intent of doing mischief in preference to good. They related, that William of Hainault, who called himself count d'Ostrevant, had taken great pains to honour this feast; that he had had the prize given him at the tournament in preference to many other foreign knights, and that he was loud in the praise of the English, and was become the liege man to the king of England by taking the oaths, and accepting the order of the blue Garter in the chapel of Saint George at Windsor; which order had been established by king Edward and his son, the prince of Wales; that no one could be admitted a knight companion of that order, without making oath never to bear arms against the crown of England, and this oath the count d'Ostrevant had taken without the smallest reservation.

The king of France and his uncles, on hearing this, were much troubled and vexed with the count d'Ostrevant. The king said,—‘ Only think, it is not a year ago since the count begged of me that his brother might be bishop of Cambray; but, after what we have heard, that would now be much to our prejudice. It will be better that our cousin

of

of St. Pol have Cambray than John of Hainault.— The Hainaulters were never our sincere friends, nor ever will be, for they are too proud and presumptuous, and have always been more attached to England than France, but a time may come when they shall dearly pay for it. 'We will,' added the king, 'that the count d'Ostrevant be summoned to appear before us, and do homage for the county of Ostrevant, or we will dispossess him and attach it to our crown.'

Such of the council as were present, replied,— 'Sire, you say well, and what you order ought to be done.' The duke of Burgundy, whose daughter the count had married, was highly displeased at these reports; for he had always pushed his son-in-law as much as he could into the good graces of the king and the royal family. This business was not neglected; for the king of France wrote very sharp letters to the count d'Ostrevant, which he sent to him at Quesnoy, commanding him to come to Paris; and, in the presence of the peers of France, do homage for the county of Ostrevant, or he would make war upon him, and dispossess him of it.

The count d'Ostrevant, on perusing these letters, found that the king and his council were much angered, and instantly assembled his most confidential counsellors to consider of the answer. He called to his aid the lord de Fontaines, the lord de Gomegines, sir William de Heremies, the lord de Traflegny, the bailiff of Hainault, the lord de Sancelles, sir Race de Montigny, the abbot

de

de Crespin, John Semart, and James Barrier of Valenciennes. These counsellors having some time debated, and turned the matter over various ways, thought it most advisable to write to the king of France, and answer generally to what he had urged, and demand an opportunity for so doing more particularly, by persons that were properly qualified, and not by letters. In the mean time, they recommended sending a well-informed messenger to duke Albert in Holland, to acquaint him with what was passing, and have his advice.

This was done : they wrote such humble and discreet letters to the king of France and his council, as greatly pacified them ; and sent the lord de Traflegnies, the lord de Sancelles, John Semart, and James Barrier to Holland. On being admitted to the count of Holland, they laid before him the situation of Hainault, and the letters that had been received from the king of France.

If the count of Holland was not surprised at what had happened, it is not to be wondered at ; for he replied,— I was just thinking that what you tell me would come to pass : my son William had no business to go to England. I have given up to him the government of Hainault : let him advise with the wisest and most prudent in that country. Make interest with our fair cousin, the duke of Burgundy ; for he has the power to set to rights all this business. I cannot give you better advice, nor recommend a more fit person to address yourselves to.'

On this, the envoys returned to Hainault, and related

related all that had passed, which gave satisfaction. The lord de Traffignies, sir William de Heremies, sir Race de Montigny, John Semart and James Barrier, were ordered to wait on the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. The detail of all that passed would be too long for such a history as this, that embraces so many objects. The conclusion was, that notwithstanding the support of the duke of Burgundy, the count d'Ostrevent was forced to go to Paris to perform his duty, and acknowledge his holding the county of Ostrevant from the crown of France, otherwise he would have had war instantly carried into Hainault. The lord de Couey and sir Oliver de Clisson took much pains that a war should ensue; but the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier counteracted them to the utmost of their power. As we have dwelt too long on these matters, we will return to the barons and knights of France, who were besieging the strong town of Africa against the Saracens.

## CHAP. XXII.

THE SIEGE OF AFRICA IS RAISED.—THE CAUSE OF IT.—THE KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES RETURN TO THEIR OWN COUNTRIES.

YOU have before heard, what pains the Christians took to conquer the town of Africa; for they thought, if they succeeded, they should gain great renown, and be able to withstand, during the winter, all the forces the infidels could bring against them, until they should be reinforced from Europe, especially by the king of France, who was young and fond of arms, and there were still two years to run of the truce with England: the Christians had therefore laid siege to Africa, as being the most convenient entrance into Barbary. The infidels, suspicious of such being their intentions, well victualled the place, and reinforced it with a new garrison, the better to guard it.

The siege still continued, although, after the before-mentioned loss on the part of the Christians, little advantage was gained, and the men at arms were greatly discouraged; for they could not obtain any opportunity of changing the tiresomeness of their situation, and of revenging themselves on the enemy. Many, in consequence, began to murmur and say,—‘ We remain here in vain; for if we do nothing more effectual than skirmishing,

mishing, we shall never gain the town: if, by accident, we kill one infidel by our arrows, they supply his place with ten more, as they are in their own country, and have provision and stores in abundance, while ours are brought with much difficulty and uncertainty. What will become of us, if we stay longer? The cold nights of winter will freeze and benumb us to death. We shall be in a most disagreeable state for many reasons: first, at that time of the year the sea will be so tempestuous no one will venture on it. We have now but eight days provision, and should the stormy weather set in, and prevent any vessels arriving, we must inevitably perish. Secondly, suppose we have provision and stores in plenty; how can the army support, for so long a time, the fatigue of a regular guard? The danger will be too great; for the enemy is on his own ground, and well acquainted with the country, and may attack us in the night-season, as we have already seen, and do us infinite damage. Thirdly, should we be infected with any disorder, from want of better air and fresh provision, it may be contagious, and we shall drop off one after another, for we have not any remedies to guard against such a misfortune. Besides, should the Genoese, who are a treacherous race, wish to return without us, they might embark in the night-time, and, when once on board their vessels, we could not prevent them, and they would leave us here to pay the reckoning. It will be right that we remonstrate with our lords, who are enjoying their ease, on these

these our suspicions ; for the Genoese do not conceal their opinions of us. Some of their talkers have said to our men,—‘ You Frenchmen are odd men at arms : when we failed from Genoa, we thought you would have conquered this town of Africa within a week or fortnight after your landing ; but we have been here nearly two months, and nothing has been done : by the assaults and skirmishes you make, the town need not fear you these two years ; and at the rate you go on, you will never conquer the kingdoms of Tunis, or Africa.’

The Genoese had so frequently held this language to the varlets and others of the army, that it reached the ears of their lords, and was repeated to the lord de Coucy, who was wise and prudent, and to whom the whole army looked up. He considered a while, and then said to himself,—‘ The conversations of these Genoese are but too well founded in truth : to put a stop to them, a full assembly of the principal knights must be held, to consider how we are to proceed, for winter is fast approaching.’ At this council, which was held in the duke of Bourbon’s tent, various plans were proposed ; but the conclusion was, that they would, for this season, break up the siege, and every person should return home the way he had come. The chief lords secretly made preparations accordingly, and, calling to them the masters of the galleys and other vessels, acquainted them with their intentions. The captains were much surprised, and said,—‘ My lords,

do

do not harbour any suspicions of us, for we are pledged to you by our honour and oaths, and we will most loyally and honestly acquit ourselves. Had we pleased, we might have accepted the favourable offers that were made us by the Africans, but we refused to enter into any treaty with them, from our attachments and engagements to you.'

' We have no doubts of you, gentlemen,' replied the lord de Coucy, ' for we look on you as loyal and valiant men : but we have considered our situation ; winter is at hand, and we have a scarcity of provision. Should it be God's good pleasure that we return to France, we will inform the king, who is young and fond of war, of the state of this country. At this moment, he knows not where to employ his force, for he and the king of England are at peace. He is unhappy when idle, and we shall advise him to undertake an expedition hither, as well to have the pleasure of meeting the king of Sicily as to conquer this country from the Saracens. Prepare and make ready your galleys, for we shall leave this coast in a very few days.'

The Genoese were not well pleased with the French lords for thus breaking up the siege of the town of Africa ; but, as they could not amend it, they were forced to bear with it as well as they could.

There was a rumour current in the Christian camp, that the Genoese were treating with the Saracens to betray and deliver up to them the remainder of the army. It was firmly believed by many, and they said: ' Our principal commanders

manders, the duke of Bourbon, the dauphin of Auvergne, the lord de Coucy, sir Guy de la Trémouille, sir Philip de Bar and sir John de Vienne, are well acquainted with this plot; and for this reason they have determined suddenly to break up the siege.'

When it was proclaimed that every one was to embark on board the galleys or other vessels, in an orderly manner, you would have seen the varlets in the greatest bustle packing up the purveyances of their different lords, and conveying them on board the ships which lay at anchor off the shore. When all things were embarked, the knights entered the galleys that had brought them thither: many had bargained with the captains to carry them to Naples, others to Sicily, Cyprus or Rhodes, thence to perform a pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

After having remained sixty-one days before the town of Africa, they broke up the siege, and set sail from that country in sight of the Saracens from the walls. This gave them such joy that they sounded horns and beat drums, and made so great a noise by their shoutings, as to be heard in the army of the Saracens. Several young knights mounted their horses, and galloped to the place where the camp had been, to see if they could find any thing left behind. Agadinquor d'Oliferne and Brahadin de Tunis were the first to arrive; but the Christians had so completely cleared the camp, that there was nothing for them to carry away.

The Saracens left their station to examine the camp,

camp, and remained more than two hours noticing the manner and form of it. They praised much their subtlety in sinking wells for fresh water, and, having for some time viewed the galleys under sail, they returned to visit their friends in the town of Africa. Others went to their quarters, and rejoiced greatly that the Christians had not dared to remain longer. They held their power very cheap, and said, they should no longer fear, as they had done, the French or Genoese. They spoke truly, as I shall explain. When this siege was raised, the Saracens grew proud on the occasion, for they saw the Genoese had exerted themselves to their utmost power to annoy them: this expedition could not have been undertaken without an enormous expense, and they had not gained any thing. But they did not know the great losses the Christians had suffered until that day, and I will tell you by what accident it happened. In the camp of the Christians was found, lying on the ground, a Genoese varlet, who was too ill with a fever to be removed when the sailors sought for their men to embark on board the barges. The Saracens were delighted on finding this man, and ordered no harm to be done him. They carried him to the principal commanders of their army, and told them where they had found him. An interpreter was sent for to examine him; but at first he would not make any answers, considering himself as a dead man, and desiring they would put him out of his pain.

The chiefs of the army, such as Agadinquier d'Oliferne and Brahadin de Tunis, thought they should gain nothing by his death; and to induce him to answer truly, without any equivocation, what questions should be put to him, they promised to spare his life, and send him safe and well to his own country on board of the first galley that should come thither from Genoa or Marfeilles, with a present of one hundred golden besants. The varlet hearing this, was freed from his fears of death and made easy; for he knew that these Saracens never break their words; and, as every one dies as late as he can, he said to the interpreter, 'Make them all swear on their faith to keep what they have promised, and I will truly answer whatever you may ask.' The interpreter repeated this to the lords, who having consented to his demand, the varlet said, 'Now ask what questions you please, and I will answer them.' He was first asked who he was, and his place of residence, and replied, 'Portenances\*; [that his name was Simon Mollevin, and son to a captain of a galley at Portenances];' then as to the commanders of the Christian army. He named several; for, having kept company and drank with the heralds, he had often heard their names mentioned and had remembered some of them. He was asked, if he knew the reasons why they had so suddenly raised the siege and departed. To

---

\* Portenances. In the MSS. Portenaucs. Q. if not Portocros, one of the islands of Hieres, off Provence.

this he made a very prudent reply, by saying, he was ignorant of it, as he was not present at the council of war when it was determined on, and could only tell them what was the common report in the army. It was said, that the French suspected the Genoese of a design to betray them; but the Genoese declared this was false, and wrongfully imputed to them by the French. They had left the coast because they were afraid to winter in this country, and risk the loss of as many knights as they had once done.

‘Ask him,’ said the lords to the interpreter, ‘to explain this.’ He replied, ‘So great was the loss on the day the combat was to have taken place between ten of your knights with ten of ours, that upwards of sixty knights and squires, men of renown, died that day; and it was solely on this account,’ as the Genoese said, ‘the siege was raised.’ The Saracen chiefs seemed very much pleased on hearing this, and made no further inquiries, but punctually kept the promise they had made him.

On his return to Portenances and Genoa, he related all that had passed and what answers he had made, for which he was no way blamed. The Saracens said among themselves,—‘We have been very negligent in not taking better measures against this union of the French and Genoese; for, though they have been this time unsuccessful against Africa, we must henceforward put our coast in a better state of defence (which we may easily do); and we must, in particular, guard the straits of Morocco

so strongly that neither the Genoese nor Venetians shall carry their merchandise to Flanders through this strait, without paying so great a toll as to make all the world wonder thereat, and even then it shall be considered as a matter of favour.'

What these Africans had proposed they executed ; and all the kingdoms to the south, west and east, formed an alliance, such as Africa, Tunis, Bugia, Morocco, Benmarin, Tremeçen and Granada, with a resolution of well guarding their coasts, and equipping such a fleet of galleys as should make them masters of the sea, through hatred to the French and Genoese for their late siege of Africa. They interrupted so much the navigation of the Venetians and Genoese, that merchandist from Alexandria, Cairo, Damascus, Venice, Naples or Genoa, was difficult to be had in Flanders for money ; and, in particular, every sort of spicery was enormously dear.

## CHAP. XXIII.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE PROPOSES TO MARCH  
TO ITALY, TO FORM AN UNION OF THE  
CHURCH BY FORCE, AND THENCE TO BAR-  
BARY.—AMBASSADORS FROM ENGLAND OFFER  
PROPOSALS FOR A PEACE BETWEEN HIM AND  
KING RICHARD.—THE DEATH OF JOHN KING  
OF CASTILLE.—HE IS SUCCEDED BY HIS SON  
HENRY, WHO IS CROWNED KING, THOUGH BUT  
NINE YEARS OF AGE.

WHEN the Christian fleet sailed from Africa, all crossed the sea, but did not disembark at the same port. Part met with heavy tempests that put them in great danger: the greater part, however, returned to Genoa. Religious processions were making in France for their safety, for they knew not what was become of them, not having had any intelligence since their departure.

The ladies of Coucy, of Sully, and the dauphiness of Auvergne, were in great anxiety for their lords, as long as the expedition lasted, and were much rejoiced on hearing they were returned. The duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy set off privately for Paris, leaving their attendants behind, and arrived there about Martinmas-day. The king, as was natural, was well pleased to see them, and asked many questions respecting Barbary, and the success of the expedition. They

related all they had seen or heard, which was eagerly listened to by the king and his brother, the duke of Touraine. The king said, ‘If we can manage to restore union to the church, and establish a sound peace between us and England, we should very much like to lead a great army to Barbary, to exalt the Christian faith, confound the infidels, and acquit the souls of our predecessors, king Philip of happy memory, and king John our grandfather ; for both of them put on the vermillion cross, to pass the sea for the holy land ; and they would have done so, if violent wars had not nearly overturned their kingdom. Now, if we can restore union and peace to the church, and lengthen our truce with the English to a proper term, we are resolved to undertake this expedition.’

Such were the conversations between the king of France and his uncle, the duke of Bourbon, and the lord de Coucy, and thus did things remain. By degrees, those who had been in Africa returned home. The king lived at Paris the whole season, residing sometimes at the Louvre, at others, with the queen, at the hôtel de St. Pol.

About St. Andrew’s day, when the knights were almost all returned from Barbary, circumstances which served for a topic of conversation with every one, another expedition was talked of, at the Court of France, but I cannot say who was the first promoter of it. The king of France, who had a great love of arms, was thus addressed ; ‘Sire, your devotion and inclination naturally lead

lead you to wish to carry an expedition against the infidels beyond sea, to conquer the holy land.' 'That is very true,' answered the king: 'it constitutes the occupation of my thoughts night and day.' I believe the proposal was made by the lord de la Riviere or sir John le Mercier; for they were both too much attached to pope Clement, and so greatly in the king's favour, that whatever they said was done. Others, who were at the time in the king's company, said; 'Sire, you cannot, in conscience, undertake such an expedition, while the church is disunited: begin with the head, and your enterprise will end the better.' 'How would you have me begin?' asked the king. 'Sire,' replied they, 'at this moment you have nothing on your hands. You are at peace with the English; and you may, during the truce, undertake, if you please, an expedition: we do not see a more brilliant one, than to march a large army to Rome and destroy this anti-pope, whom the Romans, through error, have elected and placed on the throne of St. Peter. This may be done, if you exert yourself: a more meritorious or honourable service cannot be performed; and the instant the anti-pope and his cardinals shall learn you are advancing against them with a large army, they will surrender themselves to your mercy.'

The king listened attentively to this, and said he would consider of it. In truth, he was warmly attached to pope Clement; for the preceding year, when at Avignon, he had received the greatest

honours and attentions from him, and he had given to him, his brother and uncles, more than they had asked. This he thought was deserving some return, and, on his taking leave, he had promised the pope, that he would attend to his affairs in such wise that the effect of his interference would soon be known. He considered himself bound, therefore, to do something in his behalf.

At this time, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy were at Paris ; and it was generally reported, that soon after March the king would set out from Paris, for Savoy and Lombardy, and that the duke of Savoy was to send his cousin-german with him. The king was to have under his command the duke of Touraine and four thousand spears ; the duke of Burgundy two thousand ; the duke of Berry the same number ; the constable of France two thousand Bretons and Saintongers, from the flat countries ; the duke of Bourbon one thousand spears ; the count de St. Pol, and the lord de Coucy one thousand spears ; and all these men at arms were to be engaged and paid for three months, and thus from time to time.

The pope and cardinals at Avignon were as much rejoiced, when intelligence of this was carried to them, as if the expedition were already commenced. It was proposed in the council that the king should invite the duke of Brittany to form part of it, as they did not think it prudent to leave him behind. The king in consequence wrote him a handsome letter, to explain the plan and intention of the expedition, and to invite him to make

make part of it, which he sent by an honourable man, one of his ushers at arms.

When the duke of Brittany had read the letter, he burst out into laughter, and calling to them his lord de Montboucher, said,—‘ See what my lord of France writes me. He has undertaken to set out in the month of March next for Rome, and destroy, by the power of his arms, pope Boniface and his cardinals. As God is my help, he will never succeed, but shortly have other flax to spin, which will force him to give up such foolish business. He desires me to accompany him with two thousand lances. As I wish to pay him every honour that is his due, I shall write a very civil answer back to please him, and say that, if he persist in undertaking the expedition mentioned in his letter, he shall not go without me, since he is desirous of my company; but I tell you, lord de Montboucher, that I shall not trouble any of my vassals on the occasion, for I repeat, it will end in words.’

The duke of Brittany sent very handsome letters by the usher at arms, to the king at Paris, who was well satisfied with the answer. No one attempted to discourage the king respecting this expedition, for it was highly agreeable to the knights and squires, as it made them of importance, and employed their time. All ranks of persons made their preparations, even the clergy, and the provinces were willing to tax themselves to send men at arms, at their expence, to serve the king.

This

This expedition ended, however, as the duke of Brittany had foretold ; and I will relate what occasioned its being broken off. About Candlemas, intelligence was brought to the king and his council, which they had not thought of, nor foreseen. Part of the king of England's cabinet-council were sent in handsome state to wait on the king of France at Paris. At the head of this legation were, sir Thomas Percy, sir Lewis Clifford, sir Robert Bricquet and other knights, whose names I never heard. The arrival of these knights at Paris was a great surprise though the king had been informed of their coming ; for the king of England had written to him, to say he should in a few days send some of his council to Paris, if he would be there. The king of France was very anxious to learn why these ambassadors had been sent in such haste, and what they had to propose.

The English knights dismounted at the sign of the Château de Festu, in the street of la Croix du Tiroir, where they had fixed their lodgings. The king of France was at the Louvre, and the duke of Touraine with him : his three uncles, and the constable of France, were likewise at their different hôtels in Paris. The English arrived at Paris in the afternoon, and staid the remainder of that day and the night at their inn : on the morrow, about nine o'clock, they mounted their horses, which were handsomely decorated, and went in state to the Louvre, where the king was waiting for them. He was attended by his brother, his uncles, the count de St. Pol, the lord

de

de Coucy, sir Oliver de Clisson, constable of France, sir John de Vienne, sir Guy de la Trimouille, and other great barons.

The ambassadors dismounted in the square before the Louvre, and, on entering the gate, were met by the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, sir Helion de Lignac, sir Peter de Villiers, sir William de la Trimouille and sir William Marcel, who received them as knights of the king of England's council, and conducted them most respectfully to a handsome apartment where the king of France was. On their entrance, they took off their hoods, and bowed very low. Sir Thomas Percy was the bearer of their credential letters, which he presented to the king, who, on receiving them, made the knights rise. When they were risen, they retired some paces back. The king of France, having perused the letters, called to him his brother and uncles, and shewed their contents. His uncles then said, 'My lord, call to you the knights from England, and demand the cause of their coming hither.' The king did so, and the knights were asked the purport of their credential letters. Sir Thomas, in reply, said,—'Dear sire, it is the wish of our lord the king of England, that his most confidential counsellors such as his uncles of Lancaster, York or Gloucester, or some prelates of England of whom that country has the best opinion for sense and prudence, should meet others of like character, of your council, that they might consider on the means of forming a solid peace between you and him

him and your allies. This, if it could be effected, would give him such great satisfaction, that he would not complain of any trouble or pain his counsellors may endure, whom he shall send across the sea to Amiens, or any other appointed place, for the carrying on this negotiation, and we are come hither from our lord to propose this matter, and to learn your intentions upon it.'

The king replied,—‘Sir Thomas, you and your companions are welcome, and your visit has given us very great pleasure. You will not leave Paris immediately: in the mean time, we will assemble our council, and, before your departure, you shall have such answer as shall be satisfactory to you.’

The English were well pleased with this reply, and the king entered on other matters of conversation. It was now dinner-time; and the English knights were detained to dine in the Louvre, and given in charge to the lord de Coucy and the lord de la Riviere, who led them into a very richly ornamented apartment, where a table was spread for them. They dined well, and at their leisure, the lord de Coucy and the constable keeping them company. When dinner was over, they went into the king’s apartment, and staid until wine and spices were brought in splendid caskets boxes of gold and silver. After the knights had partaken of these, they took leave of the king and his lords, and descended into the court, where they mounted their horses and returned to their lodgings.

The

The proposals sir Thomas Percy had brought from England were exceedingly agreeable to the king of France, to his uncle the duke of Burgundy, and to others of his council; but not to all, especially to those who were interested concerning the pope of Avignon. They foresaw, that if negotiations were once begun between the two crowns, it would require a long time to bring them to a conclusion, and thus retard the expedition that was intended against Rome, to reduce pope Boniface and his cardinals to the obedience of pope Clement. The object of peace, however, was so welcome to all parts of Christendom, and would be of such advantage to every country that no one dared to say any thing against it. Besides, the duke of Burgundy and his council and the duke of Bourbon were unanimous in their opinion with the king.

The king of France shewed much attention to sir Thomas Percy and his companions; but there was one knight among them called sir Robert Bricquet, whom he did not see with pleasure, for he was a Frenchman, had always been of the party of England or Navarre, and was now a knight of the king of England's chamber. The king prudently dissembled his thoughts; but, when he conversed with them, he always addressed himself to sir Thomas Percy, sir Lewis Clifford, or to sir John Clanvow. The king said,—‘ We shall be happy to see a solid peace established between our adversary of England and us, for the war and quarrel has lasted too long a time; and

I wish

I wish you to understand that it shall be no way our fault if the negotiations be not happily concluded.'

'Sire,' replied the knights, 'our lord the king of England, who has sent us hither, has the same peaceable inclinations, and said, on our departure, that it should not be to his blame if these wars and dissensions were not put an end to, for they had lasted too long; and he was much surprised some prudent means had not been sooner thought of for this purpose.' 'Well,' replied the king, 'we shall see what good affection he bears us.'

The English remained at Paris six days, and dined every day with one or other of the dukes. In the mean time, the matter of their coming had been debated in council, and it was settled that the king of France, his uncles, and his cabinet-council, should be at Amiens the middle of March, and wait there for the king of England, his uncles and council, if they were willing to meet them. The English knights engaged, that on their side there should not be any delay, and that some of the king's uncles, if not all, would be at Amiens on the appointed day.

Thus was this busines concluded; and the day before the ambassadors were to take leave of the king and quit Paris, he went to the palace, and magnificently entertained at dinner these English lords: his brother and uncles were present: he made sir Thomas Percy sit at his table, calling him cousin, from his relationship with the earl of Northumberland.

During

During the dinner, sir Thomas Percy and his companions were presented with rich and handsome jewels, all but sir Robert Bricquet: he was passed unnoticed. The knight, who presented them in the name of the king, (sir Peter Villiers, high steward of the household) said to him; 'When you shall have done service acceptable to the king, he is rich enough to reward you for it,' and then passed by. Sir Robert was melancholy on hearing this speech, and then first learnt he was disagreeable to the king of France: he was therefore forced to put up with the slight as well as he could.

When dinner was over, and they had washed and the tables were removed, grace having been said, minstrels of song and others were called in, who performed, as usual, before the king and his company. After this, sir Thomas Percy advanced, and, casting himself on his knee, said; 'Very dear sir, I and my companions are much surprised at one thing. You have most splendidly entertained us, and presented us with rich gifts, for which we feel very thankful; but sir Robert Bricquet, who is a knight at arms, and chamberlain to our sovereign lord the king of England, has been passed by, and we would willingly know the reason of it.'

The king of France replied; 'Thomas, the knight you have named, since you wish to know the cause of his being overlooked, ought not to have taken part against us; for, had he been made prisoner in war, his ransom would have instantly been

been paid by his death.' On saying this, he raised up sir Thomas Percy, and conversed on other matters.

Shortly after, wine and spices were brought, which having partaken of at their pleasure, the ambassadors took leave of the king, returned to their lodgings, and paid the amount of their expenses. On the morrow, they departed from Paris, and continued their journey to England, where they related to the king and his uncles every thing that had passed, greatly extolling the king of France's magnificent entertainments, and the rich gifts he had made them.

We will, for a while, leave speaking of England, and say what was passing in Castille. You have heard of the alliance between the king of Castille and the duke of Lancaster, who had claimed that crown in right of his duchess, the lady Constance, eldest daughter of the late don Pedro, by whom he had a beautiful daughter, that was married to don Henry, prince of Galicia, heir to the crown of Castille. This marriage confirmed the peace between them.

About two years after the celebration of these nuptials, king John of Castille departed this life, and was buried in the city of Burgos. On this event, the great barons and prelates of the realm assembled, and declared their intentions to have for their king the young prince of Galicia. This was done, and the prince was crowned in the ninth year of his age: his queen was six years older. Thus was the daughter of the duke of Lancaster,

by

by the lady Constance, queen of Castille, and of all the possessions of don Pedro, don Henry and don John, excepting those parts which had been assigned to the duke and duchess of Lancaster for their joint lives. They had, beside, a pension of one hundred thousand florins, for which four of the most opulent cities in Castille were pledged. The duke of Lancaster had the pleasure of seeing his two daughters queens of Castille and Portugal.

We will now speak of the expedition made by John count d'Armagnac into Lombardy, for the matter requires it.

#### CHAP. XXIV.

##### OF THE EXPEDITION OF COUNT JOHN D'ARMAGNAC INTO LOMBARDY.—HIS DEATH, AT THE SIEGE OF ALEXANDRIA.

THE intention of the count d'Armagnac to lead an army into Lombardy has been already mentioned in this history. His object was to assist his sister-german and her husband, sir Bernabo Visconti, eldest son to that sir Bernabo whom the duke of Milan had unnaturally put to death. This duke was Galeas Visconti, count de Vertus, whose daughter the duke of Touraine had married.

The lady of sir Bernabo was daughter to sir

John d'Armagnac, and, being in great affliction, had recourse to her brothers, to whom she related the misery of her situation, her poverty and necessity, and humbly prayed their pity, and that they would defend her against that tyrant the count de Verus, who had disinherited her without the smallest reason.

The count d'Armagnac promised his sister that he would comply with her request, and had declared, that whatever it might cost him to recover her rights, he would exert himself in the attempt to the utmost of his power. What he had engaged to do, he performed; for I have before mentioned, that in conjunction with the dauphin d'Auvergne, he had entered into treaties with many of the captains of forts in Auvergne, Limousin, Quercy or other parts, who, under colour of fighting for the king of England, had done the greatest mischiefs to France. These garrisons of English, Gascons and Bretons, received different sums, and a pardon from France on surrendering their castles and quitting the kingdom. They readily, therefore, engaged to follow the count d'Armagnac into Lombardy, and retired until the proper time towards the rivers Rhône and Saône. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy permitted them to take what purveyances they pleased in their lordships, for they were very desirous to be rid of them.

The lieutenant of the king of France for Dauphiny was at that time sir Enguerrand Durdin, and the king had written to him to permit all men

at arms and their companions, who should say they belonged to the count d'Armagnac, to pass freely through Dauphinay, and to have whatever they might be in need of, for their money.

The count de Foix, hearing at his residence at Orthès of the large armament the count d'Armagnac was raising, began to be alarmed, for he was of a suspicious temper. He had indeed learnt, for common report flies every where, that it was intended for Lombardy, against the duke of Milan; but as the ancestors of this count d'Armagnac, and himself and his brother sir Bernard, had been at war with him, he was doubtful if this expedition might not in the end be directed against him. Not to be unprepared, therefore, he had reinforced and revictualled all his castles, that if they should make an attack, he might be enabled to meet them. But neither the count d'Armagnac nor his brother had such thoughts: they were desirous strictly to observe the truce now established between them.

Many knights and squires from Gascony, England and Brittany, who had engaged their services to the count d'Armagnac, had he declared war against the count de Foix, would have left him and joined his adversary; so much was the count de Foix beloved by men at arms for his liberality and courage.

When the duchess of Touraine was informed that the count d'Armagnac was preparing to lead a large body of men at arms into Lombardy, to make war on her father the duke of Milan, and that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy con-

sented to it, from their desire to rid the kingdoin of so many pillagers which had of late so grievously harassed it, she did not remain idle, but instantly wrote letters to the count de Vertus to give notice of it, that he might provide himself accordingly. The duke of Milan was already informed of this intention of the count d'Armagnac, and had collected men at arms wherever he could find them, and reinforced his towns and castles with men, stores and provision, concluding he should have a war to support against this count d'Armagnac.

About the middle of March, the greater part of the men at arms were assembled in the country near Avignon: between that place and Lyons, on the banks of the Rhône, were fifteen thousand horse. They crossed that river where it was the easiest to pass, and, entering Dauphiny, took up their quarters in the villages or fields. Others continued their route, the more speedily to clear the passes of the mountains, which are dangerous for man and horse.

The count d'Armagnac, his brother, with other knights, visited pope Clement and his cardinals at Avignon, and offered to serve them and the church against the tyrant of Lombardy, for which they felt themselves obliged and returned many thanks. They staid at Avignon eight days, while their troops passed: they then took leave of the pope and cardinals, and made ready to follow them. The two brothers, sir John and sir Ber-  
d'Armagnac, here separated, and thus sir  
dressed him: ' Fair brother, you will now

return

return to Comminges and Armagnac, to guard our lands, for all the forts are not yet free from the marauders. There is Lourde, which sir Arnaut de Béarn holds in the name of the king of England; and Bouteville is garrisoned by Foixiens under the command of sir John de Greilly, son to the late captal de Buch. Notwithstanding there is a truce between the count de Foix and us for the present, he is so bold and enterprising a knight, that we are never sure what his intentions may be; and for these reasons I wish you to return instantly home. You shall hear very frequently from me during my absence, and do you write constantly.'

Sir Bernard readily consented to what his brother had proposed, for he thought it prudent and well advised: he had not beside any great inclination to cross the mountains. Just on his departure, the count said,—‘ Bernard, you will go hence to our cousin Raymond de Touraine, who has married my cousin the daughter of the prince of Orange, and is now engaged in war with the comtat Venaissin, that belongs to the pope: entreat of him, for I have been so requested by the pope, that he make his preparations to follow me in this expedition, and he shall be my companion in all things: I will wait for him at Gap\*, situated among the mountains.’ Sir Bernard promised to convey this message, and the brothers separated, never to see each other again.

---

\* Gap,—an ancient city in Dauphiny, capital of the Gapençois, generality of Grenoble.

'The count d'Armagnac took the road leading to the town of Gap, and sir Bernard that to the castle of Boulogne, where sir Raymond de Touraine resided, who received him very kindly. Sir Bernard eloquently delivered the message from his brother, to induce him the more readily to comply with the request contained in it. Sir Raymond replied,—“ Fair cousin, before your brother, the count d'Armagnac, shall have advanced far into Lombardy, or laid siege to any town, it is very possible that I follow him, but it is full time as yet for me and my people to begin our march. If my cousin therefore sends me intelligence about the middle of May I will set out, for by that time I hope to make an end of my war against my uncle, the pope at Avignon, and his cardinals, who not only refuse me justice, but detain from me, by force, every thing that my uncle, pope Gregory, disposed of in my favour. They think to tire me out and excommunicate me, but they shall be mistaken. They engage knights and squires to make war on me, by granting them absolutions, but such have no talents for war; and I shall have more effective men at arms for a thousand florins, than they can obtain by their absolutions for seven years.’

‘ My good cousin,’ answered sir Bernard, ‘ keep to your resolution: what you say is true; and I would not, by any means, advise you to act otherwise than you do: just as you have spoken will I write to my brother d'Armagnac.’

They were one whole day together, in the castle  
of

of Boulogne. On the morrow, sir Bernard d'Armagnac departed, and, crossing the Rhône at the Pont du Saint Esprit, rode over the mountains, through Quercy, until he reached his destination, leaving his brother to manage for himself his war with the count de Vertus. Before, however, he left Pont du Saint Esprit, he wrote letters to the count d'Armagnac, to inform him of the answer he had received from sir Raymond de Touraine, and had also letters from his brother, on his road towards Gap. Having read their contents, he pursued his journey without farther attending to them.

We will continue our history of the count John d'Armagnac until we bring it to a conclusion, without speaking of other events.

It was his great love and affection for his sister and brother, who had been fraudulently disinherited by the count de Vertus, who styled himself lord of Milan, that had induced him thus gaily to march into the plains of Piedmont and Lombardy. There were likewise two very just reasons for this armament; one was, the carrying away such numbers of pillagers, who had for so long a time oppressed and robbed many of the provinces in France, for by this means the country was cleared of them: the other, to assist his sister and her husband, who had unjustly been deprived of their inheritance, so that he had, on every account, justice on his side. The companions were unanimous to serve him, and exclaimed,—‘ Let us cheerfully attack these Lombards: we have a just

quarrel and a good captain, which will assist our cause, and we are going to the richest country in the world; for Lombardy receives the fat from other parts; and, as the Lombards are rich and cowards, we shall gain great profit. We, who are captains, shall return so enormously rich, that we need never more think of war, nor carry on any future warfare.'

Such were the conversations on their march; and when they came to a rich country they halted there for some time, to refresh themselves and their horses. At the time I am now speaking of, that gallant English knight, sir John Haftonde\*, was making war on the Florentines for pope Boniface, and had fixed his quarters in the neighbourhood of Florence. That country as well as Perugia were in rebellion against the pope. The count d'Armagnac thought if he could gain the assistance of sir John Hawkwood, who was a most enterprising and courageous knight, he should be more successful in his war. In consequence, during his residence at Grandet, at the entrance into Piedmont, he wrote to him long letters, explanatory of his situation, and the reasons which urged him to make war on the duke of Milan. Having properly sealed these letters, he gave them to a prudent messenger, who performed his duty well, in delivering them to sir John Hawkwood: he was then near Florence, and had under his com-

---

\* Sir John Haftonde.—Sir John Hawkwood.

† Grande,—in the MSS. Grando. Q. Grenchle.

mand full two thousand combatants. He read the letters, or had them read to him. On hearing their contents, he was well pleased, and replied, ' that as soon as he should have put an end to the war he was then engaged in, he would not attend to any other before he had joined the count d'Armagnac.'

The squire of the count, who had brought these letters, was an honourable man, and replied,— ' Sir, you speak well, and to the point: have the goodness to put into writing what you say, that my lord, the count d'Armagnac, may be the more assured of your intentions.' ' Very willingly,' said sir John Hawkwood; ' and it is but right, since my pleasure and will are to meet him.' In the course of two or three days, the letters were written and given to the squire who had come from the count d'Armagnac. He instantly set out on his return, and found the count near to Pignerol\*. There were great negotiations going forward between him and the marquis de Saluces, and the marquis was to join him in his war against Milan. The news the squire brought from sir John Hawkwood was highly agreeable to the count d'Armagnac. He said, ' that if it pleased God, he would this season make so severe a war on the count de Vertus, that he should be glad to accept of reasonable terms, or he would perish in the attempt.'

\* Pignerol,—an episcopal town of Piedmont, at the entrance of the valley of Perouse.

From what you have heard, you may suppose the count d'Armagnac had a great desire to aid his sister, and it was compassion for her that urged him to it. When his men at arms had passed the mountains, and had gained the rich plains of Piedmont, near to Turin, they were not long before they made excursions, and committed great destruction on the surrounding villages, which could not any way withstand them.

The count d'Armagnac laid siege to Asti\*, intending to wait there for sir John Hawkwood. Purveyances came from all quarters; and the companions ransomed small forts for provision, and, until their wants were supplied, they took every thing away. The country of Pignerol and the territories of the marquis of Montferrat were open to their foraging for themselves and horses. There came likewise great quantities of provision to them from Dauphiny and Savoy. Many leant to the count d'Armagnac from the justice of his quarrel with the count de Vertus, who had wickedly put to death his uncle Bernabo, to gain his inheritance; and, although several of the great lords of that country were silent on the subject, they felt much compassion for those who had been thus disinherited.

During the siege of Asti, very agreeable news was brought to the count d'Armagnac from sir John Hawkwood. He informed him, that the

---

\* Asti,—an ancient town of Piedmont, five leagues N. E. from Albi, eight S. W. from Casal.

Florentines and Venetians had submitted to the mercy of the pope; that he was to be paid sixty thousand florins, for himself and his companions; and that, the moment these were received, he would march with five hundred men at arms and a thousand infantry towards the frontiers of Genoa, and, whether his enemies would or not, he intended to force a passage to join him. The count d'Armagnac and his army were much pleased at the thoughts of being assisted by so able a commander as sir John Hawkwood; and he was advised to break up the siege of Afti, and transfer it to a larger town called Alexandria, situated at the entrance of Lombardy, and, after they should have conquered it, to advance to Bressueil\*, which is also a large and handsome city.

The siege was in consequence transferred from Afti to Alexandria, which is a fine city, and seated in a rich plain on the frontiers of Piedmont and Lombardy, in the direct road to Genoa. The men at arms had crossed the Tefno, and lodged themselves at their ease in this plentiful country.

Sir Galeas, lord of Milan†, count de Vertus, resided in the city of Pavia, and daily heard of his enemies establishing themselves in his country: but his greatest surprise was, how the count d'Armagnac found money to satisfy the large body of men at arms he had brought with him. His

\* Bressueil. Q. Brescia

† He was created duke of Milan 1395, by Wenceslaus king of the Romans.—*Dic. Hist.*

council, with whom he conversed on this subject, replied,— ‘Sir, these are free companions, and part of those pillagers who have so long harassed France: they do not require pay, but to seek adventures, and run the chance of gain from plundering the country. In order to deliver France from them, after the surrender of their strong holds, the count, d’Armagnac leads them hither. The duke of Berry and the dauphin of Auvergne, whose lands they had sorely oppressed, treated with them by means of the count d’Armagnac, who offered the king of France and the above mentioned lords to engage them in his quarrel with you. By dint of money he purchased their forts; and the king of France granted them a free pardon for all their past deeds, on condition they joined the count d’Armagnac; and whatever they could conquer in these countries was to be their own. They therefore ask no pay; and there are among them men at arms that have five or six horses, who, if in their own country, would be constrained to go on foot like absolute paupers. They adventure themselves boldly, and it is hazardous to engage with them, for they are all of determined courage. The best advice we can give is, that you guard well your cities and principal towns, which are strongly garrisoned and well provided with all things; for they have no artillery, nor any machines for carrying on a siege worth thinking of. They will advance to the barriers of your towns to skirmish and do gallant deeds of arms; but they will not gain any thing you may regret, if one may judge by

by what has passed, for they have now been in this country more than two months, and have only conquered a small and insignificant fort. Let them therefore come and go, without offering them combat; for they will soon be tired of the war, and will be defeated without a battle. When they have destroyed all the low countries, they will be in want of provision, and famine will force them to return, if no worse accidents befall them. You must order your men at arms to keep in bodies near to each other, that, in case of need, they may succour and give advice to those of the garrisons who may want it. Reinforce with them all your towns and castles; for the rich citizens are not accustomed to war, and will not defend themselves like knights or squires who have been brought up to the profession. Send some of your chivalry into Alexandria: you will gain doubly by it, for your city will be more ably defended, and your subjects will love you with greater affection when they see you are attentive to them in their distress. You are beside bounden to do this, for they pay you taxes and other levies for your governing and taking care of them. Your enemies cannot have a sufficient force to surround Alexandria on all sides, and prevent the men at arms you shall send thither from entering the town; and, when the inhabitants shall see them arrive, their courage will be raised, their attachment to you increased, and any treaties they might have thought of entering into with your enemies will be put an end to.'

The

The lord of Milan followed the advice that had been given him, and, without delay, sent thither a body of knights and men at arms that were in his pay. On being mustered, they amounted to five hundred lances; and an ancient knight, who had long been used to arms, called sir James de la Berme, was appointed their commander. They rode through bye ways until they arrived at Alexandria in the evening, and entered it, when their enemies had retired fatigued to their quarters, from skirmishing at the barriers, for they could not remain idle. The citizens were rejoiced at the arrival of sir James de la Berme and his companions, and not without cause; for the count d'Armagnac, not having seen any men at arms during the three days he lay before it, concluded none were in the town, and had kept up a continual assault at the barriers; but, small as the defence was, it had done so well, that the Armagnacs had not gained any advantage.

Sir James de la Berme, on entering the town, retired with his men to the lodgings which had been assigned them, and having taken some refreshment, they were waited on by the principal inhabitants, to congratulate them on their arrival. He inquired into the state of the town, and the numbers and situation of the enemy, in order that he might act accordingly. The most intelligent replied, 'that from the moment the count d'Armagnac had come, there had never been any cessation of skirmishes and attacks on the barriers.' 'Well,' replied the knight, 'to-morrow, if it please

please God, we will see how they bear themselves, and what they may be inclined to do. They are ignorant of my arrival, and I will lay an ambush for them, and make a private sally.' 'Ah, my lord,' said those who had before spoken to him, 'you must be very cautious how you act, for they are sixteen thousand horse at least, and, should they discover you in the open plain, they will surround and overpower you by their numbers, without striking a blow.' The knight answered, 'We will consider more of it; for, since we are come, we must attempt some deeds of arms.' The conversation now ended, and every one returned to his home; but the knight told his men, secretly, he intended making a sally and placing an ambush, that all might be prepared against the morrow.

The next day, sir James de la Berme and his troops being armed, made a sally through a private gate, on the opposite side of the town to the place where the besiegers lay. He was accompanied, at the distance of half a league, by about three hundred of the townsmen, to a narrow valley where they could not be seen. He had left two hundred without the barriers, with orders, if they were attacked to defend themselves faintly, retreating towards this valley, where they would be supported by the ambuscade. They promised punctual obedience to these orders. The day was exceedingly hot; but the count d'Armagnac was young and enterprising: having heard mass in his pavilion and drank a cup, he demanded his arms, and, having completely equipped himself, displayed

played only his pennon, and was attended by no more than one hundred men; for he did not expect to meet with greater opposition than usual, and advanced at a slow pace towards the barriers. True it is, that some few men at arms followed him by degrees; but others said,—“What signifies arming? and why should we give ourselves so much trouble, when we cannot meet with any one at the barriers worth fighting with?” They staid therefore, within their camp, eating and drinking. The count d’Armagnac, on coming to the barriers, began to overthrow and beat down many of those posted there to receive him, as good men at arms know how to do; but the townsmen did not wait long, before they began to retreat slowly towards the ambuscade.

When sir James de la Berme saw it was time, he fellied forth out of the ambush, and the Armagnacs were surrounded and attacked on all sides. They valiantly defended themselves, and were reinforced by little and little with men from the camp. Many gallant deeds were done this day, which was the feast of St. James and St. Christopher. It was so very hot, that those who bore arms thought they were in an oven, for there was not any wind; and the young men at arms were overpowered by the heat, and unable to exert themselves. Add to this, that the force of the lord de Milan was three to one of the Armagnacs.

The dust oppressed them so much, they could not see each other; but the Armagnacs, in this, suffered

suffered the most.. This was an unfortunate day for the count, who was so overcome by the heat, and near fainting, that he withdrew from the battle, without friend or foe knowing whither he was gone. He had retreated to a small grove of alders, through which ran a little brook ; and he no sooner felt his feet in the water, than he thought he was in paradise, and seated himself by the side of the stream. He, with some difficulty, took off his helmet, and remained covered only by the linen scull-cap, and then plunged his face in the water, at the same time, unfortunately, drinking large draughts ; for he was thirsty from the heat, and could not quench it. He drank so much, that his blood was chilled, and a numbness of limbs seized him, with a strong inclination to faint. He could not move, and lost the use of his speech. His attendants knew not what was become of him, and were the more uneasy, because many prisoners had been made : they therefore ceased fighting.

A short time after this, a squire belonging to the duke of Milan perceived the count d'Armagnac, and wondered much, when he saw him, who he could be ; for it was visible he must be some knight or man of high rank : he called out, ' Who are you ? Surrender ; for you are my prisoner.' — The count heard him, but could not make any answer, as he was unable to articulate, but held out his hand, and made signs that he surrendered. The squire then endeavoured to raise him, but, finding his attempts vain, seated himself beside him,

him, while the skirmish was still continued, and many gallant actions performed.

Sir James de la Berme, being a prudent and valorous knight, perceiving the day was his own, and that many of the enemy were killed and wounded, but that his men were growing weary, and the Armagnacs increasing by fresh men from their camp, ordered a retreat to Alexandria, his men vigorously defending themselves as they retired. The squire, who had fortunately found the count d'Armagnac in the state I have mentioned, unwilling to leave him behind, for he thought him a person of distinction, called to some of his companions to assist in carrying him to the town; and declared that whatever he should receive for his ransom, he would handsomely divide with them for the trouble they would have.

They complied with his request, and, with some difficulty, carried him to the squire's lodgings in the city, where the count was disarmed, undressed and put to bed. By this time, sir James de la Berme had, with his men, re-entered the place, and barricaded the bars and gates, having many prisoners with them. They disarmed and refreshed themselves with what they found at their quarters, as did likewise the Armagnacs, who had been at this skirmish, on their return to the army.

When it was mentioned in the camp that no one knew what was become of the count d'Armagnac, they were much alarmed, and some went to search the

the places in the neighbourhood where the skirmish had been fought, but, to the great dismay of their companions, they returned without having discovered any traces of him. The squire, into whose hands he had fallen, desirous to know who he was, addressed himself to a Gascon squire, a man of honour that had been made prisoner, and begged of him to accompany him, with the person who had captured him, to his lodgings. They went thither, and the Lombardy squire led the Gascon to his chamber, where the count d'Armagnac lay bitterly bemoaning. He brought a candle near his face, and said to the Gascon, ' My friend, do you know who this man is ? ' The Gascon, leaning down to examine his features, instantly recognised him, and replied,—' Yes, I ought to know him well ; for it is our commander, the count d'Armagnac.' The Lombardy squire was rejoiced to hear his prisoner was of such distinction ; but the count was so very ill, he heard nothing they asked of him. Upon which, his master said ; ' Come, come, let us leave him quiet, that he may recover himself,' and they all quitted the chamber. He died, however, that same night.

When, on the morrow, it was known that the count d'Armagnac had died in his bed at Alexandria, sir James de la Berme would not that it should be made secret, but sent information of the event by some of the prisoners to the camp, to see how they would act on the occasion.

The whole army were in dismay on hearing their loss; for they had now no commander in chief to look up to, as they were mostly all free companions. They therefore said, 'Let us hasten back to our own countries, for we have lost all opportunities of gaining any thing here.' It was soon known in Alexandria that the Armagnacs were in despair for the death of the count: they therefore made a sally from the town, advancing full gallop to the camp, shouting 'Pavia for the lord of Milan!' Not one of the Armagnacs made any defence, but allowed themselves to be slain, like wicked people as they were: the conquest was great, for the army were so cast down, that they surrendered without striking a blow, and, throwing down their arms, made for Alexandria, whither the Germans, and other soldiers in the pay of the lord of Milan, drove them like a herd of cattle.

This unexpected death of the count d'Armagnac happened very unlucky for himself and his army. Had he remained quiet but five days, sir John Hawkwood would have arrived with five hundred horse and one thousand foot; and many valiant deeds would have been done by this knight and his men; but an end was now put to every thing by this loss.

You may suppose the count de Vertus was in high spirits on hearing his enemies, whom he greatly dreaded, were killed, made prisoners or put to flight, and that the count d'Armagnac was dead. He more dearly prized his knight, sir

James

James de la Bérrie, through whose prudence and valour this good fortune had befallen him: He appointed him commander in chief of his chivalry, and president of his council. The lord of Milan considered how he should act towards the prisoners; and, as he was anxious to free his country of them, he behaved in the most courteous manner, giving to every gentleman a horse, and to the infantry one florin each, besides their liberty, free of ransom; but he made them all take an oath that they would never more bear arms against him.

Thus did this army return defeated from Lombardy and Piedmont, to Savoy and Dauphiny; but they were in the utmost distress, for the inclosed towns refused them admittance, and the gates of all castles were shut against them. They had soon spent their florins, and it was necessary for them to work or starve. Some shewed compassion, and gave them money; but others, on the contrary, laughed at and abused them, saying, 'Go, go seek your count d'Armagnac, who has burst himself by drinking at a fountain near Alexandria.'

They were still worse off when they came to the rivers Rhône and Saone, which they thought to cross without molestation; but it was otherwise, for the king had commanded all the bridges and fords to be guarded against them. They fell now into the greatest poverty, and were never after able to unite together.

Thus was the armament of count John d'Armagnac destroyed, and his sister remained in the same distressful state as before. The lord of Milan ordered the body of the count d'Armagnac to be embalmed, put into a coffin, and escorted by a bishop of his country and such of his relations as had remained to his brother sir Bernard d'Armagnac, who was much concerned at the melancholy event, but could not any way remedy it. The count d'Armagnac was buried in the cathedral church of Rodez, where he lies.

---

## CHAP. XXV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND IS ANXIOUS TO MAKE A PEACE WITH FRANCE.—THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER THROWS OBSTACLES IN THE WAY.—SIR PETER DE CRAON, FORMERLY THE FAVOURITE OF KING CHARLES AND HIS BROTHER THE DUKE OF TOURAIN, INCURS THEIR HATRED, AND TAKES REFUGE WITH THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

SIR Thomas Percy, as you have heard, was sent by the king of England to propose a treaty of peace to the court of France, for king Richard was very desirous to accomplish it. Two of his uncles, the dukes of Lancaster and York, were of his opinion; but his other uncle, Thomas of Woodstock,

Woodstock, duke of Gloucester, Earl of Essex and Buckingham, and constable of England, would no way listen to it; telling his friends secretly, that he would never agree to any peace with France, whatever negotiations might be taken in hand on the subject, if it were not an honourable one; that all the towns, castles and lordships which were yielded to England, but had since been fraudulently taken back, must be restored, and the sum of 1400,000 francs, which had remained unpaid by the French when they began the war, must also be paid down. He declared, that as long as he lived he should never change these sentiments; in which he was joined by many of the barons of England, particularly the earl of Arundel, who privately said the duke of Gloucester was in the right, though they dissembled their opinions in public from seeing how much the king of England was bent upon peace.

The poorer knights and archers were of course for war, as their sole livelihood depended upon it. When these things are considered, and the claims of the French, it will be very clear nothing like peace could be concluded. The French demanded to have Calais destroyed, and possession given them of the lordships of Guines, Hames, Merle and Oye, with the lands of Fretin and the dependancies of Guines as far as the river that runs by Gravelines. True it is, the king of France and his commissioners were willing to give up to the king of England and his heirs as many lands in Aquitaine of equal or more value as to revenue

T 4 than

than those they demanded ; but the duke of Gloucester made too firm an opposition to this article, saying,—‘ The French wish to pay us back with our own lands ; for we have the charter of king John, sealed by him and his children, which gives up to us the whole of Aquitaine in fee simple. Whatever they have taken from it since, has been a fraud and a robbery ; and their whole attempt, night and day, is to deceive us. Should Calais and the lands they require be given up to them, they will be lords of the sea and attack our coasts. Never, therefore, so long as I live, will I consent to peace with France on these terms.’

At the time I am now speaking of, a knight of noble extraction, from Anjou and Brittany, was greatly in favour with the king of France, as well as with his brother the duke of Touraine. His name was sir Peter de Craon, and of such power that nothing was done but with his advice. He had been favourite of the late duke of Anjou, king of Sicily, and was immensely rich, which had given rise to many scandalous reports against him ; for it was currently said in France, that he had robbed the duke of Anjou. This caused him to avoid the presence of the young king of Sicily and the queen his mother ; but he had managed to acquire the affections of the king of France and the duke of Touraine.

The constable, sir Oliver de Clisson, was likewise in high favour with the king and his brother for the meritorious services he had done them in arms, and his brilliant actions during the reign of the

the late king. Sir Oliver's daughter was married as you have heard, to John of Brittany, brother to the queen-dowager of Sicily ; and this marriage had sorely displeased the duke of Brittany, who mortally hated the constable, considering both him and John of Brittany as his secret enemies. He had often repented not having put the constable to death when he had him in his castle of Ermine.

Sir Peter de Craon was a favourite with the duke of Brittany, being also his cousin, and, during the reign of his power with the king of France and the duke of Touraine, would willingly, had he been able, have caused a quarrel between them and the constable. Thus envies and jealousies, which have always underhand ruled in France, continue to act until they bring their favourites to an unfortunate end.

The constable of France had been so loyal in his whole conduct towards the crown, that he was beloved by all except the duke of Burgundy ; and the hatred he bore him originated in the duchess, who was a lady of a high spirit, and too nearly related to the duke of Brittany to love the constable : besides, she continued the affection of her father to all whom he loved, and hated those he had hated ; such was her temper. Sir Peter de Craon, who at this time resided at the court of France with the duke of Touraine, kept up a frequent correspondence with the duke of Brittany, they writing, in the most friendly manner,

ner, to each other concerning the state of their affairs.

I am unable to describe the exact grounds of their correspondence; but I, John Froissart, author of this history, during the time of my residence at Paris, (which was when sir Peter de Craon made the daring attack, in the night-time, on the constable, who narrowly escaped death, as I shall relate), seeing public affairs likely to be much troubled and turn out unfortunate, made many and frequent inquiries why sir Peter de Craon had so very suddenly lost the affections and favour of the king and the duke of Touraine. I had so often demanded the cause from those who ought to be acquainted with it, that at last I heard the truth of what was commonly believed to have occasioned it. He was under the displeasure of the duke of Touraine, for having revealed secrets intrusted to him by the duke to the duchess; and, if he did so, he behaved shamefully. The duke was so fond of sir Peter de Craon that he made him his companion, dressed him in the same clothes as himself, and carried him wherever he went, intrusting him with all his most secret thoughts. The duke, at the time young and amorous, much amused himself with the company of ladies and damsels, and, as I heard, was particularly attached to a young frisky damsel of Paris. His intrigue was known and his secrets betrayed, to the great vexation of the duke, who could not accuse any other of having done it but sir Peter de Craon; for to him alone the duke had discovered it, and had led

led him with him when he visited secretly this noble young lady.

The duke was much smitten with her, and had proffered her, if she would consent to his wishes, one thousand golden crowns ; but she had refused them, saying, ‘ that her love for him was not on account of his riches, but that his affection had won hers ; and that she scorned to sell her honour for gold.’ The whole of this business was told the duchess, who sent for the young lady to her chamber. On her entering, she called her by her name, and, with much anger, said, ‘ How is this ? do you seek to wrong me with my lord ?’ The lady was thunderstruck, and, with tears replied, ‘ Oh no, madam : please God, I never will nor even think of it.’ ‘ It is not so,’ said the duchess ; ‘ for, I am well informed, my lord and you love each other mutually ; and the matter is so far advanced, that at such a time and place he offered you a thousand golden crowns to possess you. You refused them, for which you behaved well, and this time I forgive you ; but I caution you, if you value your life, not to have any further conversation with my lord, but, through regard to me, send him a dismissal.’

The young lady, finding herself justly accused and in some danger, replied ; ‘ Madam, I will free myself from him as soon as possible, and henceforth so act that you shall never again hear any thing disagreeable of me.’ On this, the duchess permitted her to depart, and she returned home. The duke, much in love, and ignorant of what had

had passed, went to the place where the lady resided; but, on seeing him, she fled, and acted contrary to her usual manner, shewing dislike rather than love; for she was afraid to do otherwise, from the promises she had made to the duchess. The duke noticing such a difference in his reception, was very melancholy, and would know the cause of it. The young lady, with tears, said,— ‘ My lord, you have revealed to the duchess the offer you once made me, or, if not yourself, some one has done it for you: recollect yourself, for you are discovered. Madame de Touraine told me of it herself, and frightened me exceedingly; but she has this time forgiven me, on condition that I promised, on my oath, never again to give her cause for jealousy, by any further conversation with you.’

The duke was much vexed at hearing this speech, and said; ‘ Fair lady, I swear, on my faith, that I would rather have lost one hundred thousand francs, than have betrayed you to the duchess. Since you have given her a promise on oath, keep it; but, cost what it may, I will find out who has discovered our secrets.’ He then went away, and, though he dissembled his agitation, he did not think the less concerning the cause. In the evening, he came to the duchess’s apartments and supped, shewing her more affection than he had hitherto done, insomuch that, by fair speeches and attentions, the duchess discovered the author of her information, concerning his intrigue, to be sir Peter de Craon.

The

The duke took no further notice of the matter, and, having passed the night, on the morrow, at nine o'clock, mounted his horse, and went from the hôtel de St. Pol to the Louvre. The king was going to hear mass, and received his brother affectionately; but, perceiving from his manner that he was angered, he said; 'Fair brother, what ails you? you seem much agitated.' 'My lord, if I am, I have good cause for it.' 'What is the matter?' said the king: 'we wish to know it.' The duke, unwilling to hide his grief, told him, word for word, every thing that had passed, complaining bitterly of sir Peter de Craon, and added; 'My lord, if it were not for the love I bear you, and for my own honour, I swear on the faith I owe you I would have him slain.' 'Do no such thing,' said the king: 'we will order him, by our special counsellors, to quit instantly our palace, for that we have no further need of his services; and do you the same on your part.' 'That I intended,' replied the duke of Touraine, who was satisfied with what the king had said.

This same day, sir Peter de Craon was told by the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier, from the king, that he must no longer reside in the palace, and instantly seek other lodgings. At the same time, sir John de Bueil and lord d'Ervaux, Géneſchal of Touraine, delivered him a ſimilar message from the duke of Touraine. Sir Peter ſeeing himself thus dismissed, was much ashamed and greatly angered: he could no way account for it, as the messengers had not declared to him the

the cause of his disgrace. Being desirous of admittance to the presence of the duke, to learn from him how he had angered him, he was told, that neither the king nor the duke would hear any thing he had to say. When he found his disgrace was resolved on, he packed up all he wanted, and set out, much dejected, from Paris, for a castle of his in Anjou, called Sablé\*. He remained there some time, but in very low spirits, from being driven from the palaces of France, Touraine and Sicily. He therefore determined, since their gates were shut against him, that he would retire to the duke of Brittany, and relate to him what had happened.

This he executed, and met the duke at Vannes, who received him kindly. He had already heard what had befallen him, and sir Peter again told him every particular that had passed, and that he was banished the court of France. The duke of Brittany, having heard his story, replied; ‘ Good cousin, make yourself easy: it is the lord de Clisson who has brewed this mischief for you.’ From this speech, a deadly hatred sprung, and greatly increased, as you will hear in the course of this history. Sir Peter de Craon lived so long with the duke of Brittany, that he was forgotten in France; for the constable and the king’s council never publicly mentioned his name. They did not like the

---

\* The castles of Craon and Sablé are in Anjou, two leagues distant from la Fleche.

duke of Brittany more for having invited and retained him; but the duke was indifferent to the king of France's anger or love, and provided all his towns and castles plentifully with stores and provision, plainly shewing he cared not whether it was war or peace between him and France.

Every thing he did was known to the king and his council; and those most in the king's favour thought him presumptuous, and menaced him for his conduct. The duke held their menaces cheap, and declared he would wage war on the count de Penthièvre in earnest, and on all his abettors, for he had just cause of quarrel. He said; 'This count de Penthièvre, our cousin, signs himself John of Brittany, as if he was our heir. We have no objection to his signing John, for that is his name, or count de Penthièvre; but we are resolved he shall lay down the ermines, and title himself John of Blois, or of Châtillon, and bear none other arms but those: if he refuse, we will force him to do it, and take from him his lands, which he holds in vassalage from us. With regard to the duchy of Brittany, he need not think of that, for we have a son and a daughter who are our heirs. Let him seek some other inheritance, for he will be disappointed in ours.'

Such were the conversations of the duke with sir Peter de Craon, who, far from contradicting any of his future plans, rather urged him on, from hatred to the constable and council of France.

We will now leave this subject, and speak of a  
more

more melancholy one relative to the count Guy de Blois, whom I have before mentioned in this history as my great patron and master.

---

### CHAP. XXVI.

THE DEATH OF THE YOUNG COUNT LOUIS DE CHASTILLON, SON TO COUNT GUY DE BLOIS.—THE SUDDEN DEATH OF GASTON COUNT DE FOIX.

I HAVE already spoken of the marriage that took place between Louis de Châtillon, son of the count de Blois, and the lady Mary, daughter of the duke of Berry. In the settlements of this marriage, the duke managed well for his daughter; for she had a dower of six thousand livres, French money (which are well worth the same sum of francs, reckoning them as florins) assigned her on the county of Blois, so that, if she survived her husband, the county of Blois would be obliged to pay her this sum annually during her life. Now it fell out, that about St. John Baptist's day, in the year of our Lord 1391, the boy whom I have called Louis de Blois, son to the count de Blois, left his father at the château des Moutils\*, situated.

---

\* Les Moutils,—a village in the Brieois, diocese of Blois.

ated in the county of Blois, and set out for Hainault to visit his mother and wife. Not long after his arrival, he was seized with a fever, for he had rode very hard, and the weather was hot: he was also of a tender age, being no more than fourteen years old, and, in spite of the physicians, he died, for they could not check the fever. His parents, you may suppose, were much grieved for the loss of their heir, as was the young lady of Berry: she loved him most affectionately, and considered herself as nobly married. The count de Blois was uneasy at the consequences, for his affairs were rather in confusion, and he knew the duke of Berry to be avaricious beyond measure, who, in order to grasp at the dower of his daughter, would take possession of the county of Blois: he therefore waited the event in silence.

Thus were the two daughters, Bona and Mary, widowed in the same year. The eldest was married to Amadeus count of Savoy, who died very suddenly, and so much was said on the subject that sir Otho Grandson was near being arrested for the suspicions that were laid to his charge, and forced to quit Savoy, France and Germany, to fix his residence in England.

In this year, died likewise suddenly, the noble and gallant count de Foix. I will say how it happened. True it is, that of all the pleasures of this world he took most delight in the chace, and was always well provided with hounds of all sorts, having never less than sixteen hundred. The count de Foix was at this season hunting in the forest of Sauveterre, on the road to Pampeluna in Na-

varre, not far distant from Orthès in Béarn. The day he died, he had all the forenoon been hunting a bear, and it was late in the evening when he was taken and cut up. His attendants asked where he pleased to have his dinner prepared: he said, 'At the inn of Rion, where we will dine, and in the cool of the evening ride to Orthès.' His orders were obeyed. The count with his companions rode a foot's pace towards the village of Rion, and dismounted at the inn. The count went to his chamber, which he found ready strewed with rushes and green leaves: the walls were hung with boughs newly cut for perfume and coolness, as the weather was marvellously hot, even for the month of August. He had no sooner entered this room, than he said, 'These greens are very agreeable to me, for the day has been desperately hot.' When seated, he conversed with sir Spain du Lyon on the dogs that had best hunted; during which conversation his bastard-son sir Evan, and sir Peter Cabestan entered the apartment, as the table had been there spread. He called for water to wash, and two squires advanced, Raymonet de Lafne and Raymonet de Copane: Ernaudon d'Espaign took the silver basin, and another knight, called sir Thibaut, the napkin. The count rose from his seat, and stretched out his hands to wash; but no sooner had his fingers, that were handsome and long, touched the cold water, than he changed colour, from an oppression at his heart, and, his legs failing him, fell back on his seat, exclaiming, 'I

am a dead man: Lord God, have mercy on me!

He never spoke after this, though he did not immediately die, but suffered great pain. The knights present and his son were much terrified: they carried him gently in their arms to another chamber, and laid him on a bed, covering him well, thinking he was only chilled.

The two squires who had brought water to wash in the basin, said, to free themselves from any charge of having poisoned him, ‘Here is the water: we have already drank of it, and will now again in your presence,’ which they did, to the satisfaction of all.

They put into his mouth, bread, water, and spices, with other comforting things, but to no purpose, for in less than half an hour he was dead, having surrendered his soul very quietly. God, out of his grace, was merciful to him.

You may imagine all present were exceedingly afflicted at what had happened: they fastened the door of the chamber, that his household might not instantly be made acquainted with his death. The knights, seeing sir Evan lamenting and wringing his hands, said to him,—‘Evan, the business is over: you have lost your father and lord. We know that he loved you in preference to all others. Take care of yourself: mount your horse, ride and gain possession of the castle of Orthès, and the treasure within it, before any one know of our lord’s death.’

Sir Evan made them a low reverence, and re-

plied ; ‘ Gentlemen, I return you many thanks for the friendship you now shew me : I trust I shall not forget it ; but tell me what are my lord’s tokens, or I shall not gain admittance into the castle.’ ‘ You say true,’ answered the knights : ‘ take them.’ This he did. The tokens were a small golden ring the count wore on his finger, and a little knife with which he sometimes cut his meat at table. These were the tokens the porter of the castle at Orthès was acquainted with, and had he not seen them he would never have opened the gate.

---

## CHAP. XXVII.

SIR EVAN DE FOIX, BASTARD-SON TO THE LATE COUNT, INTENDING TO CARRY AWAY PRIVATELY THE TREASURE OF HIS FATHER, IS DISCOVERED BY THE TOWNSMEN OF ORTHÈS, WHO, HOWEVER, PROMISE EVERY ASSISTANCE TO HIM AND TO HIS BROTHER THAT IS NOT INCOMPATIBLE WITH THE TRUE HEIR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX, THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTEL-BON.

SIR Evan de Foix left the inn at Rion with only two servants, and rode in haste to Orthès, where nothing was known of the count’s death. He passed through the streets without speaking to any

any one, or his errand being suspected, until he came to the castle, and called to the porter. The porter said, 'What does my lord Evan want? Where is my lord?' 'He is at Rion,' answered the knight, and has sent me to seek for some things that are in his chamber, and to return back to him. To convince you of what I say, look here, there are his tokens, his ring and knife.' The porter, having eyed them through a window, knew them well and opened the wicket, through which sir Evan entered, and his servants led the horses to the stable.

When sir Evan had passed the gate, he told the porter to fasten it, which being done, he seized the keys, and said to him, 'Thou art a dead man, if thou do not obey me.' The porter was frightened, and asked the cause. 'My lord and father is dead,' said the knight, 'and I wish to gain possession of his treasure before any one know of it.' The porter obeyed, as it was necessary for him to do; but he would indeed have preferred that sir Evan should have the treasure to all other persons. Sir Evan knew well enough where it was deposited, in the great tower, but he had three pair of strong doors to open, and with separate keys, before he could gain admittance. These keys he was unable for some time to find, as they were in a small long box of fine steel, locked with a little steel key, which the count de Foix carried with him when he rode abroad; and it was found hanging to a piece of silk which he wore over his shirt. The knights, who were watching the body

of the count at Rion, noticing this key, could not imagine the use of it; but the chaplain of the count, sir Nicholas de l'Escalle, being present, knew it well. He had been much loved by the count, who intrusted him with all his secrets, and, when he had visited his treasure, had never taken any one but his chaplain with him. On seeing the key, he said; 'Sir Evan will lose his pains, for without this key he can never enter the treasury: this opens a small steel casket in which the other keys are.'

The knights were vexed at hearing this, and said; 'Carry it to him, sir Nicholas: you will act well by so doing, for it is better sir Evan should gain the treasure than any other: he is a good knight, and our late lord loved him exceedingly.' The chaplain answered, 'Since you advise me, 'I will cheerfully do it,' and, instantly mounting his horse, he hastened with the key to the castle of Orthès, where sir Evan was very melancholy at not finding the keys, and at the impossibility of forcing the locks of the doors; as they were very strong, and he had not any instruments for the purpose. While he was in this distress, and sir Nicholas on the road to assist him, it was known in Orthès (I know not whether by inspiration, or from women and servants returning from Rion) that the count de Foix, their lord, was no more.

This was very afflicting news, for the count was greatly beloved by all ranks. The whole town was in motion, and met in the public square, where

where they conversed together on the subje& Some who had noticed sir Evan ride up the town, said ; ‘ We saw sir Evan de Foix gallop towards the castle, and he seemed much distressed.’ Others replied ; ‘ Without doubt, what we have heard is true ; for it is not usual for him to ride without his father.’

As the men of Orthès were thus conversing and murmuring, the chaplain, sir Nicholas, fell into their hands. They surrounded him to enquire the news, and said ; ‘ Sir Nicholas, how fares my lord ? they tell us he is dead : is it true ?’ ‘ No,’ replied the chaplain : ‘ he is not dead, but most dangerously ill ; and I am hastening to seek for some things that may do him good, which I shall return with to him.’ On saying this, he passed on to the castle. Having gained admittance, sir Evan was rejoiced at his arrival, for without the small key he could never have entered the tower.

I will say how the townsmen behaved. They began to suspect the death of the count had been hid from them, and said among themselves ; ‘ It is now night, and we hear nothing certain of our lord’s health, from his officers or secretaries. Sir Evan and his chaplain, who was his confidential secretary, have entered the castle : let us guard that place this night, and to-morrow we shall have certain news. We will send privately to Rion to inquire how things are ; for we know that the greater part of our lord’s treasure is in the castle, and if he be robbed or defrauded of any part of it, we shall be blamed. We must therefore be on our

guard concerning what passes.' 'That is true,' replied others, who thought the advice good.

They instantly surrounded the castle, and placed sufficient guards at all the gates of the town, so that no one could enter or go out without permission; and this strict watch they continued until the morrow. The truth was now known of the count's death, and caused the greatest tribulation among the inhabitants of all descriptions, for he was much beloved by his subjects. The guards were now doubled, and the principal townsmen drew up before the castle.

When sir Evan de Foix saw, from the castle of Orthès, the manner in which the townsmen had drawn themselves up, and that the death of the count was known to them, he said to the chaplain, — 'Sir Nicholas, I have failed in my attempt: I can never go hence without leave of the inhabitants, for they know my father is dead, and their numbers are every moment augmenting. I must humble myself to them, for force will be of no avail.' 'You say well,' replied the chaplain: 'you will gain more by civil words than harsh ones: go, and speak to them, but act cautiously.'

Sir Evan went to a tower near the gate, which had a window looking over the bridge to the square where the townsmen were assembled. It was in this tower the lady Jane of Boulogne was brought up and educated, until she became duchess of Berry, as has been already noticed in this history.

Sir Evan opened the window of the tower, and called

called to him some of the principal inhabitants, who advanced on the bridge to hear what he had to say. He thus addressed them aloud,—‘Good people of Orthès, I know but too well why you are thus assembled and sorrowful: you have good cause for it. I therefore most earnestly entreat, for the love you bore my late lord and father, that you will not be displeased nor angered, if I have hastened to take possession of this castle and what is contained within it, for I mean nothing but what is just. You know the great affection my lord and father had for me, and that he would willingly have made me his heir. It has happened, by the will of God, that he died without having completed any regulations for that effect, which has thrown me upon you, with whom I was brought up and educated, a poor knight, bastard to the count de Foix. I therefore beg you would counsel me how to act, and assist me in this time of distress. I pray God that you will have compassion on me, as it will be an act of charity; and I shall open the castle for your free admittance, as I never thought of closing its gates against you.’

The chiefs among the townsmen answered,—‘Sir Evan, you have well spoken, and to the purpose, and we are satisfied. We therefore say, that you shall live among us: and it is our intention that you keep this castle, and all that is within it, which we will aid you to defend. Should the viscount de Châtelbon, your cousin, who is heir to the territory of Béarn, and the nearest relation to

our late lord, your father, claim any thing belonging to this castle, we will strenuously defend you and your brother, sir Graciens, in your rights. But we suppose, that when the king of France was last at Toulouse, and our lord, your father, waited on him, some regulations were made respecting these matters; and your cousin, sir Roger d'Espaign, ought to know all the circumstances relative to them. We will write, to inform him of the death of our lord, and to invite him hither, to give us his advice, as well on the state of Béarn and Foix, which may fall to ruin, as respecting the moveables and funeral of our lord. What we have now said, we promise you most faithfully and loyally to observe.'

Sir Evan was well satisfied with this speech, and threw open the gates of the castle for all to enter who pleased. Many did so, examined it well, and placed sufficient guards to defend it.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

THE CORPSE OF THE COUNT DE FOIX IS BROUGHT FROM RION TO ORTHES.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS THE BISHOP OF NOYON AND THE LORD DE LA RIVIERE INTO THE COUNTY OF FOIX, TO MAKE ARRANGEMENTS, ACCORDING TO THE DECREE OF THE COUNCIL.

THIS same day, the body of the count de Foix was put into a coffin, and brought to Orthès. The inhabitants, men, women and children, who went to meet it, wept most bitterly, remembering his valour, prudence and generosity, and the happiness they had enjoyed during the whole of his reign; for there was neither Englishman nor Frenchman who dared to anger him. They said,—‘ Our neighbours will now make war on us who have hitherto lived in peace, and we shall inhabit a land of misery and slavery. No one will now attend to or defend our rights. Ah, Gaston! fair child, why didst thou anger thy father? If thou hadst remained to us, whose youth promised so much, we should be comforted; but we lost thee when too young, and thy father has lived too short a time. He was but sixty-three years old, and that is no great age for such a handsome and healthy prince, and one who had every comfort about him. Ah, desolated and comfortless Béarn! now thou hast lost thy prince, what will

will become of thee? Never shalt thou have an equal to the gallant and noble Gaston.'

With such lamentations was the body of the noble count carried through Orthès, attended by the following knights: first, the viscount de Bruniguel and the lord de Copane, then sir Rogér d'Espaign and the lord de Laisne, sir Raymond de la Motte and the lord de Besach, sir Menaut de Noailles and sir Richard de Saint George. Sir Evan de Foix walked in the rear, attended by the lord de Corasse, the lord de Barentin, the lord de Baruge, the lord de Quer, and upwards of sixty knights of Béarn, who had hastened to Rion on hearing the melancholy news of their lord's death.

The body of the count was borne, with his face uncovered, to the church of the Cordeliers in Orthès, where it was opened, embalmed, and put into a leaden coffin, and left in that state until the day of its interment. It was handsomely watched; for there were continually burning around it, night and day, twenty-four large wax tapers, which were held by as many varlets; twenty-four being employed on this service during the day, and the like number of others during the night.

The death of the count de Foix was now public in various places, and more were sorry than rejoiced; for he had made, in his lifetime, innumerably valuable gifts, and was beloved by all who were acquainted with him. Even pope Clement shewed much concern on hearing it, notwithstanding the difficulties the count had, for a long time,

time, thrown in the way of the marriage of his cousin, the lady Jane of Boulogne, now duchess of Berry.

The bishop of Pamiers was at this time resident at Avignon ; for he was afraid of living in his diocese, from the hatred the count de Foix bore him. Although they were relations, and the count had made him a bishop, he incurred the count's disgrace, from his attempts to extend his jurisdiction, to the prejudice of the count. The pope sent for him to the palace, and said, 'Bishop of Pamiers, your peace is made : the count de Foix is dead.' The bishop was well pleased to hear it, and, in a few days, set out from Avignon, for his bishoprick in the county of Foix.

When intelligence of the count's death was carried to the court of France, the king, his brother and the duke of Bourbon, were grieved thereat, for his many good qualities. The council addressed the king : 'Sire, the county of Foix is now yours by lawful succession ; for, since the count has died, without leaving any heirs by marriage, no one can dispute your claim. This is understood by the landholders of Foix. There is also another circumstance which adds to your claim, you have lent on mortgage of that county fifty thousand francs, send and take possession for payment, and hold it as your legal inheritance : those of the county desire nothing more eagerly than to be under your government. It is a fair possession, and comes very opportunely, for it borders on Catalonia and Arragon ; and if, in time

to

to come, you should be at war with the king of Arragon, the county of Foix will be a good frontier; for it has many castles and forts which may be very advantageously garrisoned with men at arms.'

The king listened with pleasure to this speech, and, agreeing with his council, said, 'See whom we shall send thither.' They resolved on the lord de la Riviere, because he had formerly been there, and determined that he should be accompanied by the bishop of Noyon. These two lords, on hearing of their embassy, made very handsome preparations, but did not immediately set out. When they did, they travelled slowly and at their leisure, taking the road through Avignon.

---

### CHAP. XXIX.

THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTEL-BON, HEIR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX, ATTENDS HIS FUNERAL AT ORTHES.—HE IS ADVISED TO SEND TO THE BEFORE-NAMED COMMISSIONERS FROM FRANCE, TO DEMAND POSSESSION OF THE SUCCESSION WHICH HAD FALLEN TO HIM BY THE DEATH OF THE COUNT DE FOIX: HE AFTERWARDS SENDS, TO THE SAME PURPORT, TO THE KING OF FRANCE.

THE death of the count de Foix was signified to the viscount de Châtel-bon in Arragon. He instantly set out for Béarn, and arrived at Orthès;

Orthès; but, though the inhabitants made him very welcome, they did not acknowledge him for their lord. They said, ‘they were but a part of the country; and that it would be necessary for all the barons, prelates, and citizens of the principal towns to assemble and consider of the business; that Béarn was an independent territory, and those lords who resided in it would never consent that it should pay homage to any one.’

It was now determined to perform the obsequies of the count de Foix, and then to summon all the barons of Béarn and Foix; that all who pleased might attend and deliberate how to act, on the present occasion, in the choice of a lord. The barons, prelates and chief citizens of Béarn and Foix were invited to the funeral of the count. Those from Béarn came; but the Foixiens refused, saying they should stay at home to guard and defend their country until the matter of succession were determined, for they had heard the king of France laid claim to it. The bishop of Pamiers, notwithstanding this, being a relation and invited, went to Orthès in handsome state, becoming his rank.

Great were the numbers who attended the funeral of Gaston count de Foix, the last of the name, in the church of the cordelier friars of Orthès, on a Monday, the 12th day of October, in the year of our Lord 1391. In addition to the barons and knights, there were three bishops: first the bishop of Pamiers, who said mass and performed

formed the service ; then the bishops of Lescar and Oléron. The church was splendidly illuminated, and, during mass, four knights displayed, in front of the altar, the emblazoned banners of Foix and Béarn. The first was supported by sir Raymond de Châtelneuf, the second by sir Espaign du Lyon, the third by sir Peter de Quer, and the fourth by sir Menaut de Noailles.

Sir Roger d'Espaign made the offering of his sword, supported by the bourg de Copane\* and sir Peter Andrew de Béarn, governor of Lourde. The viscount de Bruniquel offered the shield, supported by sir John de Châtelneuf and John de Chantiron. The helmet was offered by the lord Valentin de Béarn, supported by sir Arnold de Rostem, and Arnold de Sainte Colombe. The war-horse was offered by the lord de Corasse, supported by sir Arnauton d'Espaign and Raymonnet de Copane.

Every part of the obsequies was most honourably and magnificently performed according to the custom of the country. Sir Evan and sir Gracien de Foix, the two bastard-sons of the count, were present, as were the viscount de Châtelbon, all the barons from Béarn, and some from Foix ; but the last, as soon as the service was ended, mounted their horses, and went to dine at Heritiel, two leagues distant from Orthès.

---

\* The family of Copane is known at this day under the name of Caupenne. The castle of Caupenne is near Bayonne.  
—*Note by the marquis de Sy.*

Very

Very early on the morrow, the bishop of Pamiers took his departure, refusing to assist at the assembly of the barons of Béarn, which was fixed for that day. As soon as the obsequies had been performed, the body of the count de Foix was taken from the leaden coffin, enwrapped with a new and handsome waxed cloth, and buried in front of the grand altar, in the choir of the church of the Cordeliers. Of him there is an end: God pardon his sins!

I will now say what was done at this great meeting of prelates, barons, knights and principal citizens of Béarn, at Orthès. I imagine, from the information I received, the viscount de Châteaubon was addressed nearly as follows: 'My lord, we know well that, from your relationship to our late much honoured lord, whose soul God pardon! you are entitled to succeed to all his inheritances, as well in Béarn as in Foix; but at this moment we dare not acknowledge you as our lord, lest we be guilty of great imprudence, and hazard this country of Béarn in a dangerous war; for we have heard that the king of France, who is our good neighbour, and very powerful, has ordered hither some of his council: we know not, nor shall we learn until they arrive and tell us, on what cause they are sent. You are not ignorant, any more than ourselves, that our late lord, whom God forgive! was last year with the king of France at Toulouse, when they had many secret conferences; and the object of these must be explained, for, should he have signed and sealed any transfer of

Foix and Béarn, the king of France will think himself justified to possess them by force. We therefore must know the terms of such treaties, if they exist, for we are otherwise situated than Foix. Ours is a free country, which owes neither homage nor servitude to any one; whereas the county of Foix is a tenure from the king of France, and the Foixiens are so attached to France, that they will cheerfully acknowledge that king for its lord: indeed, they already say, that since the count de Foix has deceased without heir-male by legal marriage, that county naturally falls to the king of France, its lord paramount. My lord, you know we shall maintain our rights, and that we will not surrender them to any lord, whether the king of France or you. We recommend, therefore, that in this business you take the lead, by treaty or otherwise.'

The viscount replied,—‘ And how would you advise me to act? for I have declared my willingness to follow every thing in reason that you shall counsel me.’ ‘ My lord,’ said they, ‘ we think you should desire your cousin sir Roger d’Espaign, who is here present, to accompany you at your expense to the county of Foix, to negotiate with the barons, prelates and principal inhabitants. If you succeed in prevailing on them to accept you for lord, or to keep secret their intentions until you shall have gained over the king of France by means of a composition in money, that the inheritance may be yours, you will have done well. Have an interview with the commissioners sent by the king of France to Foix, and offer one or even

two hundred thousand francs, you will find it cheaply bought, and have more than enough to pay it from the treasure our late lord (whose soul may God pardon!) has left behind him. But we are resolved that his two bastard-sons shall have a handsome share of his landed property, and of the ready money.'

The viscount de Château-bon answered,—‘ Gentlemen, I consent to all your wishes. Here is sir Roger d’Espaign, and in your presence I entreat that he will accompany me on this journey.’ Sir Roger said, he would cheerfully do so, as he might mediate between them; but if the king of France, his sovereign lord, or his commissioners, should require him to be of their party, or wish him to retire, he should then return. The viscount was satisfied with this answer, and said,—‘ I will never act, cousin, but by your advice; and, when you are by my side, I shall be more encouraged and the sooner accomplish my ends.’ On this, the meeting was on the point of being dissolved, when the viscount requested that he might have, by way of loan, five or six thousand francs from the treasury, to carry on his affairs. The two bastards likewise put in their claims, and desired they might have a share of the money of their father which the men of Orthès had now under their guard.

The barons, prelates and citizens, having considered these demands, agreed that the viscount should have five thousand francs, on the terms he had proposed, and the two bastards of Foix two thousand. Orders were accordingly given for their

delivery. This was complied with, and the treasurers summoned to pay it. Not one person who had any office under the late count was dismissed; but the guard of the castle of Orthès, and all within it, was given to the inhabitants of the town.

The viscount de Château-bon, on his arrival at Orthès, set at liberty all prisoners confined in the castle. They were very numerous; for the count de Foix was very cruel to any person who incurred his indignation, never sparing them, however high their rank, but ordering them to be thrown over the walls, or confined on bread and water during his pleasure; and such as ventured to speak for their deliverance ran risks of similar treatment. It is a well-known fact, that he confined, in a deep dungeon, his cousin-german, this viscount de Château-bon, during eight days; and he would not give him his liberty until he had paid down forty thousand francs. Since that time, he bore him such a hatred, that he dared not appear before him; and, had the count lived two years longer, the viscount de Château-bon would never have inherited his possessions in Foix and Béarn.

Those who had attended this meeting at Orthès now separated, to return to their homes, leaving the viscount to the care of his own affairs. He was not idle, but collected about his person those knights and squires he thought attached to him, and left Orthès with an attendance of two hundred horse. He went to Morlaas, a good town and well inclosed: it is the last in Béarn, on the side

side of Bigorre, four leagues from Pau, and six from Tarbes.

On the morrow, as he was preparing to set out for Saint Gaudens, another good town at the entrance of Foix, on the Garonne, news was brought him that the bishop of Noyon and sir Bureau de la Riviere were arrived in great state at Toulouse. The viscount de Château-bon asked sir Roger d'Espaign how he should act. Sir Roger replied, —‘ Since we have now heard of them, we will remain and observe how they proceed. In a few days, they will make us acquainted with their intentions.’

This advice of sir Roger was followed: indeed it would have been useless to have advanced further into Foix, for all the chief towns, castles, and passes over the river Garonne, were shut against them, such as Palaminich, Castres, Montesquieu, Carthas, Ortingas, Soffa, the city of Pamiers, the castle of which was under the guard of the townsmen, Savredun, Montant, Mazeres, Vespuis, and all the castles on the frontier of Arragon. The inhabitants of Foix declared that no foreign power, of men at arms, should enter their country, until the right of succession was established: they, however, shewed a great inclination that France should have their country, and that it should be governed by a sénéchal, like Toulouse, Carcassone and Beaucaire; but it happened otherwise, as I shall shortly relate.

When the commissioners from France arrived at Toulouse, they sought intelligence from the arch-

bishop, the sénéchals of Foix and Toulouse, who told them enough; for the two last had, from the great love they bore the late count de Foix, with many of the principal persons in Toulouse, attended his funeral at Orthès. They had, when there, inquired into the state and disposition of the country, from such as they imagined could inform them. Upon hearing their report, the bishop of Noyon and lord de la Rivière consulted together, and determined to send for sir Roger d'Espaign, for he was liege man to the king of France, his officer, and sénéchal of Carcassone, and keep him with them should there be occasion. According to this plan, they sent off an honourable squire, with letters sealed to sir Roger. He left Toulouse, thinking to meet sir Roger at Montréal or at Saint Gaudens, with the viscount de Château-bon; for he had heard they had left Morlaas on their road to enter Foix.

The squire followed the road to Saint Gaudens, and soon arrived there, as the distance was not more than twelve leagues. He presented the letters to sir Roger, telling him at the same time from whom they came. Sir Roger, having read them, said,— ‘ You will stay here to-day: to-morrow you shall return, and I hope have company with you.’ The squire assented to this.

The viscount and sir Roger had a long conference on the subject of these letters, and it was concluded that sir Roger should wait on the commissioners at Toulouse, when he would hear what was the object of their coming, and what their intentions.

tions. On the morrow, the knight, in company with the squire who had brought the letters, set out for Toulouse, and they continued their journey until they arrived there in the evening, when sir Roger retired to his lodgings, and the squire to his masters. On learning that the knight was arrived, the commissioners said, ' Since sir Roger d'Espaign is come in person, to-morrow we shall have some intelligence.' The next day, after mass, sir Roger waited on the bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere, who kindly received him. After some conversation on different subjects, they told him the cause of their coming, and shewed the king's pro-curation, for them to take possession, in his name, of the county of Foix. Sir Roger observed their papers and credential letters were properly drawn up, and, after a short pause, he replied; ' My lord of Noyon, and you my lord de la Riviere, I am not such an intimate counsellor of the king as ye are, for, if I were, I would (under your favour) advise him to take the money, and indeed somewhat more than what he has, on mortgage on this county, advanced to the late count, and to be repaid on his death, and let the natural heir succeed to his inheritances. This would be, in my mind, greatly to his honour and profit, and to the salvation of his soul. I will give you other substantial reasons why this should be done, if you will listen to me. First, it is well known that this mortgage was fraudu-lently made by the late count, for he abounded in money; and was in this matter actuated solely by his hatred to the true heir, the viscount de Châ-  
teau.

teau-bon, whom he thought he could never sufficiently injure. The king may therefore, if he consent to it, be implicated in this disgraceful transaction. Secondly, by following my advice, the king will be a gainer; for the county of Foix will cost him full as much to guard and defend as his receivers can collect from it, and he will, beside, lose the homage and service of a powerful man. Thirdly, he will heavily load his conscience by thus disinheriting another; for if he had meant to act justly in such a bargain and sale, he ought to have called upon all the relations of the late count, who had the remotest claims on his succession, to oppose this act, if they should have thought it necessary, which was not done. Consider, therefore, my lords, you who have so good understandings, and are come hither as those most looked up to in the king's council, all that I have said, before you approve yourselves abettors of frauds, which must affect the conscience of the king, for on you will the whole blame be thrown, and, before it be too late, apply a remedy. You have now time, for my cousin, the viscount de Château-bon, has sent me to remonstrate with you on this business; and he, as well as myself, beg you will pay attention to our complaints; for it is not just to seize all that strength and power may enable you to do.'

When sir Roger had done speaking, the bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere looked at each other; and the bishop thus replied,—‘Sir Roger, we are convinced the proposition you have made

made us is caused by your love of justice; but our commission does not extend to annihilate the bargains which may have been made between the king of France and the count de Foix. However, from consideration and love to you, and for the satisfaction of all parties, we will not proceed further in the business, if you will undertake a journey to Paris, and make to the king and council what remonstrances you may please relative to it. If you can by your eloquence prevail, that the succession of Foix devolve to the viscount de Château-bon, who is indeed, as you say, the legal heir, we shall be right glad, for we are no way inclined to disinherit him.' 'My lords,' replied sir Roger, 'you make me very happy by what you say: remain, therefore, and amuse yourselves in Toulouse during my absence, for all your expenses shall be defrayed from the treasure in the castle of Orthès.'

Thus did sir Roger d'Espaign manage the matter, during his stay of two days in Toulouse with the commissioners from France: a better negotiator could not have been sent. On the third morning, when taking leave of them, he said,— 'My lords, since I have begun this business, I see the necessity for my going to Paris, to bring it to a conclusion, but I know not in what disposition I shall find the king and his court. Should I stay longer than I propose, I beg you will not be uneasy, for it will be the fault of those with whom I must treat, if I do not very speedily return: in

in the mean time, you shall constantly receive messengers with letters from me.'

' Go, in God's name,' said the two lords: ' we know it will not be your fault if any delay happen.' Thus satisfied with each other, they separated. The commissioners remained at Toulouse, and sir Roger returned to the viscount de Château-bon at St. Gaudens, to tell him what had passed. The viscount was rejoiced on hearing it, and said,—' Sir Roger, my fair cousin, I put my whole confidence in you, and the matter interests me greatly; for it is nothing less than whether I am or am not to have the property of my family, from whom I am sprung, and whose arms I bear. I have none other but you to send to France, nor any one on whom I can depend, to lay before the king and council the hardship of my case, with a force of eloquence equal to the occasion. I therefore entreat, from your affection to me, and for the obligation I shall ever be under to you, that you would undertake this journey.'\*

Sir Roger said,—' I knew well that you would charge me with this business, and, from my love to you and our relationship, I will readily undertake it.' He was not long in making his preparations to go to Paris, and took the road through Rodez, as being the shortest, for there was now a truce between France and England. Had it not been so, this way would not have been the most expedient; for there were many forts on the borders of Quercy, Rouergue and Limousin, in the hands of the English.

We

We will now leave sir Roger to pursue his journey, and speak of the king of France and the duke of Brittany.

---

### CHAP. XXX.

THE KING OF FRANCE AND THE DUKE OF BRITTANY MEET AT TOURS, TO SETTLE THEIR DIFFERENCES.—AMBASSADORS FROM ENGLAND COME THITHER ALSO TO NEGOTIATE A PEACE.

THE great hatred which subsisted between the duke of Brittany and sir Oliver de Clisson, constable of France, has been repeatedly mentioned in this history. The duke, in addition to the ill will he bore him, was envious of the favour he was in with the king of France, and the opinion he had of his advice: he would willingly have prevented or troubled this, if he had the power, and was not fearful of offending the king. This made him frequently repent that he had not put him to death when in his castle of Ermine, for no one would have revenged it, and the matter would soon have been forgotten.

The duke, on account of this hatred and envy of the constable, was very backward in his duties to the crown of France, and, when he could, absolutely refused paying them. He knew he was

acting

acting improperly, but persisted in this conduct, for he was too much inclined to England, and provided his castles and towns with artillery and stores, sending secretly to England for men at arms and archers, whom he placed in his forts, giving it out that he was expecting war to be made on him, but his subjects could not guess from what quarter.

News of all that he was doing was carried to the court of France, and several spoke loudly against him. The duke, indeed, knew, that many of the French lords disliked him; but he was indifferent as to this, and continued to act as before, entrusting only the duchess of Burgundy with the real state of his affairs and his intentions. He was right so to do, for he was by her strongly supported. She had a great affection for the duke of Brittany, not only because he was her relation, but her father, the late earl of Flanders, had been much attached to him, and comforted him in all his distresses.

This duchess of Burgundy was a determined lady, and the duke, her husband, would not willingly have angered her, as was indeed natural; for he had gained by his marriage with her immense possessions, and was the father of many fine children, which bound him, as well as the whole royal family, the more to her.

These hatreds and jealousies were daily increasing; and although the duke of Brittany went to Paris, and paid his homage to the king, I will

not

not pretend to say that it was done from the heart, for on his return to Brittany, very little change was observed in his conduct. He had also sworn obedience to the pope of Avignon, but acted contrary to his solemn pledge, for he disclaimed him by words, and would not allow his bulls to have effect in his duchy. He was neuter between the two popes in many things, and disposed of vacant benefices according to his pleasure; so that no foreign clerk, unless he was perfectly agreeable to the duke, could obtain any benefice in Brittany. And with regard to any writs, or law processes, which were sent thither from the parliament of Paris, he held them very cheap, and seemed to expect that his own officers should take the precedence in all such proceedings.

The duke deprived even the prelates of Brittany of many of their rights, who, though they made loud complaints of this to the parliament of Paris, could not obtain redress; for when the duke was summoned to defend himself against these charges in the courts of justice, he never came nor sent any persons sufficiently authorised to answer for him. When, by order of the parliament, the king's officers were sent into Brittany to serve the duke with writs of summons, they never could speak with nor obtain a sight of him, from different excuses he made; but, when they had left his country and were returned to Paris, he said,— ‘Yes, to be sure I will go to Paris to hear law! never will I do such a thing. Three years ago, I was

was there for that purpose and to obtain justice; but the last I never could get. Our judges of the parliament turn it as they please; and they must think me very young and ignorant when they want thus to manage me. I wish to let them know, that if all my subjects were unanimous in the same opinions with me, I would find the kingdom of France so much employment that the most obstinate should listen to reason. All who had loyally and faithfully served should be rewarded accordingly, and such as had acted on opposite principles should be punished; and those who demanded justice should have it.'

Such speeches, which were often repeated, were carried to the French court; and the king's most confidential ministers said, ' This duke of Brittany is so presumptuous and obstinate in his opinions that, if he be suffered to go on with such discourses, the kingdom will be weakened, by other lords following his example, and the rights of the crown by degrees may be lost.' It was therefore resolved, to obviate all difficulties, that the duke of Brittany should be civilly invited to come to Tours, where the king of France, from the affection he bore him, would endeavour to give him the meeting, attended only by the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and the bishops of Chartres and Autun, members of his council, who were expressly named, as more in favour with the duke of Brittany than any other lords in France, except the lord de Coucy and the lord d'Estampes.

This

This plan being followed, the count d'Estampes and sir Yves d'Orient were sent into Brittany, where they had much difficulty to persuade the duke to meet the king of France and his uncles at Tours. They discussed the matter so ably, he at length said, ' that he would go to Tours; but they need not press him to prolong his journey, for further he would not go, neither would he see his enemy, sir Oliver de Clisson, as he hated him mortally.' These terms were complied with before he would consent to set out for Tours.

The two envoys returned to France to tell the king and his uncles their success with the duke of Brittany. They appeared satisfied therewith, since they could not do better. The king and his lords began to make preparations for this journey to Tours on a large scale; for they imagined they should remain there two or three months, as the treaties and negotiations which were to be proposed would require much time before they could be concluded.

The king of France, the duke of Touraine, the duke of Berry, the duke of Burgundy, his son John of Burgundy, the duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy, the count de la Marche, the count de Saint Pol, and the whole of their councils came to Tours, where lodgings had been provided for them. The constable of France and his son-in-law, John of Brittany, came thither from a different quarter, as indeed they were nearly concerned in the matters then going forward.

The

The duke of Brittany, after keeping them waiting a fortnight, at last arrived. Some said, that notwithstanding he had made them come there, he would not meet them; for he had sent twice or thrice to say he was too ill to ride; but having considered the business, he at length came. His purveyances were grand, and he and his people were lodged at their ease.

[The negotiations instantly began on both sides; but as the days were now short, it being the winter season, there could not be any long discussions before dinner, which were renewed afterward until the evening. During the time these treaties were going forward at Tours, between the king of France and the duke of Brittany, which lasted good part of the winter, sir Roger d'Espaign and sir d'Espaign du Lyon arrived there from Toulouse on a Wednesday. The city was so full of lords and other company, that it was with much difficulty they could find lodgings. Having at last obtained them, they waited on the king and his ministers, and explained, as eloquently as they were able, the cause of their coming, and the case of the viscount de Château-bon, in regard to his claims on the county of Foix, and the honour of Béarn.] The king and his council were so fully occupied with the affairs of Brittany, which touched them more nearly, that they could not attend to other business.

Sir Roger d'Espaign was however well heard, though he had not a speedy answer: he remained there

there upwards of two months, and was daily told his proposal should be considered, but the answer was not given. There was another cause of delay, during the king's residence at Tours, that increased the labours of his council; for sir John Clanvow, counsellor and chamberlain to the king of England, and Richard Rowhall, clerk, doctor of laws, and of the council of England, arrived there from king Richard, on the subject of a peace which had been first proposed by sir Thomas Percy and the lord de Clifford, some time before at Paris, as you have heard.

On their arrival, all other business was laid aside, and they alone were attended to. It was told me, they had brought credential letters to the king, and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who heard what they had to say. Their mission was to know if the king of France and his council were willing to hold conferences at Amiens, as had been proposed, to endeavour to establish a lasting peace between the two kingdoms and their allies.

The king of France, who, from every appearance, seemed desirous of peace, answered in the affirmative, and said, 'that as soon as the business between him and the duke of Brittany was finished, and he was returned from Tours, he would not attend to any thing until he arrived at Amiens, according to the former propositions, and that he would wait there the arrival of the commissioners from England, who should be made welcome with the best cheer of the country.'

The English were well pleased with this answer, and staid five days at Tours, passing their time with the king, the chief lords and the chancellor of France. Having accomplished the object of their coming, they took leave of the king and court. The king made them handsome presents, for which they returned thanks, and had all their expenses, while at Tours, paid.

During their stay, they neither saw nor spoke with the duke of Brittany, for they were anxious to avoid giving the French any cause of suspicion of underhand dealing. They returned through Paris and Picardy to Calais, and, having a favourable passage, arrived at Dover, and thence journeyed to London, where they found the king and council assembled at Westminster, and related to them the answer they had received, and what observations they had made. The king and council were satisfied with what they heard, and gave orders respecting the conferences to be holden at Amiens.

We will now return to the ambassadors from Béarn and Foix.

## CHAP. XXXI.

SIR ROGER D'ESPAIGN AND SIR ESPAIGN DU LYON, AMBASSADORS FROM THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTELBON, PRACTISE SO SUCCESSFULLY WITH THE COURT OF FRANCE, THAT HE IS DECLARED HEIR AND SUCCESSOR TO THE COUNT DE FOIX BY LETTERS PATENT FROM THE KING OF FRANCE.

SIR Roger d'Espaign and sir Espaign du Lyon acquitted themselves handsomely and successfully, in regard to the affairs of the viscount de Châteaubon. They had many difficulties to overcome with the king and the court, more especially with the members of the privy council, who had advised the king to annex the county of Foix to the crown of France, since the inhabitants were desirous of it. The king was likewise of this opinion, but the duke of Burgundy more wisely opposed it, and recommended it to the king to do nothing more than receive back the money he had advanced, saying, he had lands enough to guard without adding these, and disinheriting the lawful heir.

I believe the duke of Burgundy's advice would not have been attended to, if the duke of Berry had not taken up the matter. You have heard that formerly he had sent to the count de Foix the count de Sancerre, the viscount d'Afy, sir Wil-

liam de la Trimouille and the lord de la Riviere, to treat for his marriage with the lady Jane of Boulogne, whom the count de Foix had in ward.

The count listened to the proposals, but told the envoys that the duke of Berry should never have her for his wife if he did not give him thirty thousand francs for the expenses of her education, and this demand the duke paid, for he was determined to have the lady. This he had not forgotten, and, sending for sir Roger d'Espaign and sir Espaign du Lyon to his chamber at Tours, shut the door and conversed with them in private, saying; ' You may, if you please, succeed in the object of your journey hither; but you must first promise me, that I shall be fully repaid the sum my treasurer gave the count de Foix when I was married to my present duchess. I have always determined, that if I survived the count, this money should be paid me back.'

The two knights, hearing the duke thus talk, looked at each other, but said not a word. The duke added,—' My fair sirs, it was for this I wished to speak with you by ourselves: consult together on what I have told you; for, be assured, whether you consent or not, I will obtain re-payment, and your treaty shall not succeed. I can depend on my good brother of Burgundy acting as I please; he is lieutenant over all the countries of Oil, as I am over those of Oc, and none will dare to controvert my orders, or oppose my will. This viscount de Châteaubon will find money enough for my demand, since the late count has left

left more behind him than the king has in his treasury.'

Sir Roger d'Espaign now answered,—‘ My lord, suppose we were to accede to your proposal, we have not any money with us.’ ‘ Oh,’ replied the duke, ‘ sir Roger, that shall be no hindrance. You shall take the debt on yourself, and give me your bond for it: I have that opinion of your honour I will credit you for this, or a much larger sum if it were necessary.’ ‘ My lord,’ said sir Roger, ‘ I thank you: we will consult together, and you shall to-morrow have our answer.’ ‘ I am satisfied,’ answered the duke; when the conversation ended, and the doors were opened.

The two knights returned to their lodgings, and had many conversations, whether or not they should agree to the duke's demand, and accept of his mediation. Every thing considered, they thought the best they could do would be to consent: for the matter had been drawn out to a great length without any appearance of being decided; but on condition that all the landed property was yielded to the viscount de Châteaubon. On the morrow, they returned to the duke of Berry, and engaged themselves for the payment of thirty thousand francs, on condition he would influence the king and council to allow the viscount de Châteaubon to inherit Foix, on his paying back the sum it had been mortgaged for. The duke replied,—‘ Leave that to me: I will have it done, otherwise I shall not expect you to fulfil your engagements.’

From that day forward, the duke of Berry was so anxious to receive his thirty thousand francs and so able an advocate for the viscount de Châteaubon, that every thing was arranged according to his wishes. The king and council desisted from their first demands; and the two foreign knights had given them letters of confirmation of the county of Foix to the viscount de Châteaubon, addressed to the bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere, who had remained at Toulouse.

The substance of these letters, as I learnt from credible persons who had been on this embassy, was as follows:—‘ We Charles, by the grace of God, king of France, order and command our reverend father in God the bishop of Noyon, and our knight and chamberlain the lord de la Riviere, to allow the viscount de Châteaubon, heir of Foix and Béarn, to have peaceable possession and enjoyment of the same, and of all dependencies thereto belonging, on condition that he first pay into your hands the sum of sixty thousand francs, which you will receive in one payment in the city of Toulouse; and we will, after payment made, that the receipt, sealed by our sénéchal of Toulouse, to the viscount de Châteaubon, shall be a full and legal acquittance to him, and to whom-ever else it may concern. In addition, we expect payment of twenty thousand francs, for the expences you have been at in your journeys to and from the county of Foix on this occasion: you will for this money give acquittances from our love-named office in Toulouse: saving and reserving

erving that sir Evan and sir Graciens de Foix, bastard-sons of the late Gaston count de Foix, of happy memory, have a reasonable share of the moveable property and inheritances of their deceased father, according to the discretion and advice of sir Roger d'Espaign, the viscount de Brûniquel, sir Raymond de Châteauneuf and the lord de Corasse, to whom we will write, that they acquit themselves in the matter honourably to the discharge of our conscience; for, some time since, we made such promise to their father. And should any demur arise, either on the part of the four knights to whom we have entrusted this business, or from obstinacy and rebellion on the part of the viscount de Châteaubon, we annul and declare all treaties we may have entered into void, and of no effect. In testimony whereof, we have given these letters under our seal, in the city of Tours, this 15th day of December, in the 12th year of our reign.'

When these letters were finished to the satisfaction of the king, council and ambassadors, the knights made preparations for their departure; and, having taken leave of the king and lords, and paid their expenses, they set out from Tours on their return home.

You before heard that the lord Louis de Sancerre, marshal of France, was resident in the neighbourhood of Carcassone, and had been so a long time, as lieutenant for the king over all those countries as far as the Dordogne. The bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere sent

for him to Toulouse, and thus addressed him:—  
 ‘ Marshal, the viscount de Châteaubon, who declares himself heir, by the death of Gaston count de Foix, to the county of Foix and its dependencies, save and except what may concern Béarn, is in treaty with us. We have sent intelligence of it to the king and his council; but we know not, nor indeed can we as yet, how the king and his ministers may please to act in the matter. Be you, therefore, provided with a sufficient body of men at arms, and garrison well the frontiers of Foix. Sir Roger d’Espaign and sir Espaign du Lyon are now in France; and if we hear from them, or by messengers from the king, that there is no probability of any compromise taking place, but that the king means to annex Foix to his crown, you will instantly enter that county, and take possession of it, according to the powers the king has intrusted to us in this affair.’

The lord Lewis said, that in regard to this he was well prepared, and was increasing his strength daily, waiting for the answer from the king.

We will now return to the duke of Brittany.

## CHAP. XXXII.

DURING THE RESIDENCE OF THE KING OF FRANCE AND DUKE OF BRITTANY AT TOURS, THEIR DIFFERENCES ARE PARTLY ACCOMMODATED BY MEANS OF THE MARRIAGES OF THE DUKE'S SON WITH A PRINCESS OF FRANCE, AND A SON OF JOHN OF BRITTANY, SON TO THE LATE LORD CHARLES DE BLOIS, WITH A DAUGHTER OF THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

I HAVE mentioned that treaties were negotiating at Tours between the king of France and the duke of Brittany. The duke gave the king and his council a great deal of trouble, for he would not abate any of his pretensions. When any propositions were made to him, he refused them; and in like manner was it returned, when he offered any on his part; so that there did not seem a probability of their disputes being terminated.

The duke declared himself willing to serve the king according to the homage he had paid, and to the duty he owed. ‘Why then,’ asked the king’s council, ‘since you acknowledge yourself vassal to the king, do you not obey him in all things?’ ‘Wherein am I a rebel?’ demanded the duke. They mentioned many instances, and, first, his conduct towards the pope of Avignon, whom the king,

king, his lord, obeyed as the true pope, and with regard to whom he was dissembling his opinion, and refused to obey his commands, filling up all the vacant benefices in his duchy, without paying attention to those who had provided themselves with bulls from the pope. This, they said, was rebellious against the king in thought and deed.

The duke replied,—‘That no one had a right to arraign or judge his conscience but God alone, who was its supreme lord. With regard to the two rival popes, he had never made any declaration; that when Urban was elected, he was with his cousin, the earl of Flanders, in the town of Ghent; that the cardinal, Robert de Quesne \*, sent to the earl letters patent, sealed with his seal, which signified and certified to my cousin, that, by the grace of God, and the divine inspiration, the conclave had elected Urban pope. How can an election be set aside that seems to me made in the most regular manner? I wish not to say a word against the king or his crown, for I am his cousin and vassal, and will faithfully serve him, whenever I am required, to the utmost limits of my duty; but I shall speak my mind as to those who do not advise him honourably.’ ‘Tell us who they are, and we will provide a remedy.’

‘Oh,’ replied the duke, ‘you know them better than I do, for you live more with them; but, as to what you have said touching the vacant benefices, I am not so severe against suitors for them

---

\* In the MSS. it is Robert de Geneve.

as you say, for I permit the clergy of my duchy to provide themselves with bulls from pope Clement; but I object to strangers having the same liberty, and will tell you why I refuse it. They want to carry all the profit of the benefices out of the country, without serving them. This is so contrary to reason, conscience and justice, that I will never consent to it. You say my conduct was rebellious and haughty, respecting the king's sergeants that came with writs into my country of Brittany. I neither am rebellious nor wish to be so. You ought to know, or, if you do not, you should learn, that the fief of Brittany is so noble, no law proceedings can take effect unless the duke, its natural lord, shall hold an open court of justice, to hear causes, and the reasons why any appeals may be made thence, and to see that the officers, who bring writs of appeal or summons, do their duty regularly: should there be sergeants or other officers in my duchy negligent, or against whom strangers have cause of complaint, I would punish them severely, for a warning to others. In addition to what I have said, that the king's council do many reprehensible things, they plainly discover their inclinations to encourage the hatred of the king against me: the proof is clear, by their suffering my cousin, John of Blois, to act in two instances very injuriously against me: the first is, the signing himself John of Brittany, as if, by bearing this name, he could form a claim on the inheritance of that duchy; but he cannot have any right, because I have children, a son

and daughter', who will succeed to my possessions. Secondly, he bears the ermines, which are the arms of Brittany, and he had formerly renounced the name, arms, and all things thereto appertaining. True it is, that sir Oliver de Clisson supports him in this conduct, to vex me; and, as long as this shall continue, I will not listen to any treaty of peace or friendship with the king. I shall not make war against him, for he is my natural lord, but if, through envious or malevolent informations, he make war on me, I will defend myself, and shall be found ready on my own territories. All that I have now said, I wish the king to be made acquainted with.

Such was the bitterness with which these negotiations were carried on between the king of France and the duke of Brittany. The duke was master of his council, but the king was led by sir Oliver de Clisson, the bëgue dé Villaines, sir John le Mercier and sir William de Montagu. The duke of Burgundy, who saw more clearly into this matter, was uneasy that the duke's reasons were made public, though he supported them privately as much as he could, in which he was assisted by the duke of Berry, who hated the confidential advisers of the king. By their means, his treasurer, Bethisac, had suffered an ignominious death at Beziers, which he was forced to put up with, for it was not yet time to revenge himself.

In this state did they remain at Tours for upwards of three months, without any progress being made in the treaties. They were on the point of being

being broken off, for the king was impatient at the delays, and wanted to return to Paris, whence he would issue a special summons for the ensuing summer, and make war on the duke of Brittany and his allies, leaving all others in peace. But the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, the lord de Coucy, the count de Saint Pol, sir Guy de la Trimouille, the chancellor of France, and many other great barons and prelates, desirous that an end should be put to these differences, held a conference, and said,—‘ We, who are so nearly connected with the king and the greatest barons of his realm, having agreed to meet the English commissioners this Lent at Amiens, to consider of a treaty of peace, must hasten to put an end to this ill humour of the king and the duke of Brittany ; for should we separate without doing so, the English would have the advantage in the business at Amiens : they will expect the support of the duke of Brittany and his country, for they are near neighbours, and we shall have a war with Brittany and England, like what we had before, and it will be too heavy for us.’

These lords and their councils so often turned the matter over, that they at length discovered a means of reconciliation between the king and the duke of Brittany. I will mention it, for without this I do not believe it would ever have taken place. It was proposed that a marriage between the son of the duke of Brittany and a daughter of the king of France should take place ; and, as John of Brittany had a son, a similar connection should

should be formed with the daughter of the duke of Brittany. These articles were agreed upon: but, notwithstanding this alliance, John of Brittany was obliged to lay aside the arms of Brittany, and take those of Châtillon; and, if he were desirous of bearing any thing relative to Brittany, as a descendant of that house by his mother's side, he might bear on the arms of Châtillon a bordure ermine, three fables or, and an escutcheon ermine in chief gules, and none others. Thus was the business brought to a conclusion, and the duke restored to the friendship of the king of France and his uncles. He dined with the king, in company with John of Brittany, count de Penthièvre, and much affection was mutually displayed by all parties, on account of the marriages which had been agreed to be solemnized.

The duke of Brittany would never see sir Oliver de Clisson, for the hatred he bore him; but the constable was indifferent to this, as the hatred was mutual. All things being now settled, and the lords having sworn to see these marriages consummated when the children should be of a proper age, and the different treaties having been engrossed, they thought it time to quit Tours, for their stay had been too long, and return to Paris, as the time was approaching for the conferences at Amiens. The king of France, his brother, uncles and council, had promised to be there to receive the king of England and his council. The duke of Brittany took leave of the king, his brother and uncles, and of those most in his favour, and set out

from

from Tours for his own country; as did the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, with other lords; but the king, the duke of Touraine, the duke of Bourbon and the lord de Coucy, staid at Tours, and I will tell the reason.

---

### CHAP. XXXIII.

THE COUNT DE BLOIS AND MARY OF NAMUR, HIS COUNTESS, SELL TO THE DUKE OF TOURAINE THE COUNTY OF BLOIS WITH OTHER LANDS.—THE VISCOUNT DE CHASTELBON TAKES POSSESSION OF THE INHERITANCES OF THE LATE COUNT DE FOIX.

I HAVE before recorded in this history, that Louis de Blois, son to the count de Blois, had died when young, at Beaumont in Haimault, leaving the lady Mary, daughter of the duke of Berry, a widow, who lost by the event many of the good things of this world: for her husband was a rich heir, and would have been a powerful lord. I mention this, because I wish it to be known in times to come how such large properties have been disposed of or alienated.

The count and countess of Blois were not formed to have any more children; for, by indulging themselves too much in the pleasures of the table, and eating too many sweet dishes, they were become enormously

enormously fat. The count could no longer mount his horse, but was always carried in a car whenever he travelled from one place to another, or took the diversions of hunting or hawking. As this was well known to the lords of France, a thought struck the duke of Touraine, during his residence at Tours, which he carried into effect.

The duke had a very large sum of ready money, perhaps a million of florins, lying idle, which he had received from the count de Vertus, on his marriage with the lady Valentina of Milan. This money he wanted to dispose of to advantage. He knew the great properties of the count de Blois would be dispersed after his death. The county of Blois would fall to John of Brittany, who was his cousin-german; the lands in Hainault to the duke of Juliers and duke of Lancaster, excepting Chimay, which would go to the Conflans in Champagne. The county of Soissons had belonged formerly to the counts of Blois, but was alienated to the lord de Coucy, for the ransom of Guy de Blois from England. The lands of Argies and Nouvion went to other heirs: Holland and Zealand fell to the count of Hainault. Thus would this noble inheritance be dispersed piece-meal, for it was well known it must happen on the death of the present possessor. The duke of Touraine cast his eyes on this property, as he had money enough to purchase it, were it sold at a fair price, and determined to desire the king, his brother, to treat with the count de Blois for the county of Blois, which was a valuable property, and very convenient

to

to him by bordering on his duchy of Touraine. To this county are also attached many considerable fiefs.

The duke of Touraine, having this scheme in his head, did not rest before he mentioned it, first to the king; then to the duke of Bourbon, and to the lord de Coucy, who was an able negotiator and much in favour with the count de Blois, for he had married the daughter of his cousin-german the duke of Lorraine. The duke of Touraine and the above-mentioned persons were careful not to drop the least hint of this busines to the duke of Berry, because the lady Mary, his daughter, had her jointure of six thousand francs a year settled on this county, and the duke of Berry imagined that, for this sum and the charges that would accrue, he should obtain the county of Blois, for a person more covetous of other people's property could not be found. The duke of Burgundy was also kept ignorant of this plan; because the lady Margaret, his eldest daughter, was married to William of Hainault, son to the count of Hainault; and he thought, that by some incident, by purchase or otherwise, the lands of Holland, Zealand and Hainault might revert to his son-in-law, the count d'Ostrevant, or to his son John of Burgundy, who had married Margaret eldest daughter of the count of Hainault.

The king and the three other lords proposed therefore, on their departure from Tours, to visit their cousin the count Guy de Blois, who resided at a handsome castle, eight leagues from Tours, called

Château-morant, and to open a treaty for the sale of the county of Blois, with the ~~count~~ and the ~~countess~~, who was very avaricious.

It chanced, by some accident I am unacquainted with, that the bailiff of Blois, named sir Reginald de Sens, a knight of law and arms, and of great prudence, heard of this intended visit and its purposes. He was much concerned from the love he bore his lord, lest he might dishonour himself and disinherit his heirs by a sale, for which he had no need, and severely wound his conscience. He determined therefore, if possible, to prevent it, and, setting out from Blois, rode all night to Château-morant, where, being introduced to the count, he said, ‘ My lord, the king of France, the dukes of Touraine and Bourbon, with the lord de Coucy, are coming hither.’ ‘ That is true,’ replied the count: ‘ why do you mention it?’ ‘ I am come to tell it, because you will be pressed to sell your heritage. Consider well the subject, as you have time before hand.’

The count de Blois was much surprised at hearing this, and said,—‘ I cannot prevent any one from speaking to me, or offering proposals; but, before I consent to the selling my inheritance, fraudulently disinheriting my heirs and dishonouring myself, I must have neither plate nor porringer of silver to pawn.’ ‘ My lord,’ replied the knight, ‘ remember this when the time comes, for you will see that all I have told you is true.’ ‘ Don’t doubt it, bailiff,’ said the count: ‘ I am not so young nor so foolish to listen to such proposals.’

-posals.' On this, the bailiff returned to Blois, where he resided, for he did not wish the company he had mentioned should find him there. Two days after, the king and his company arrived at Château-morant, to the great joy of the count and countess of Blois, at his visiting them, and they entertained him splendidly. The king, to win the affections of the count, and gain him over to his plan, said—' Fair cousin, I see you are the lord in our kingdom the most endowed with honour and liberality, and that in former times you must have had large expences: to assist and recompence you, we will grant you a tax on the county of Blois that shall be worth twenty thousand francs.'

The count returned his thanks and accepted the gift, which, however, was of no value to him, for he never received one penny from it. After this, the matter of sale of the county of Blois was entered on, first by the king, and seconded by the duke of Bourbon: but, finding the count very cool and indifferent about it, they addressed themselves to his lady, and remonstrated with her, in specious terms, respecting the hazard she incurred of being reduced to a poor estate should she survive the count, as she had every appearance of doing; and it would be more for her advantage to have riches and jewels in plenty, which she might easily secure, if she would persuade her lord to listen to the proposals they had made for the purchase of the county of Blois.

The countess, from her avaricious disposition

and her eagerness to receive the florins, assented, and procured every thing they wanted, with the assistance of another person, that is to say, a valet de chambre of the count, called Sohier, who was the son of a cloth-worker in the town of Mechlin. This Sohier so completely governed the count, that every thing was done as he ordered, and the count had given him upwards of five hundred francs of yearly revenue for ever. See the mischief of such cases, and how miserably some lords are governed; for Sohier had neither prudence nor sense worth mentioning, to deserve such rewards, except the foolish pleasure of his lord, who had taken a friendship to him.

In like manner, the duke of Berry had a worthless fellow, called James Thibaut, that governed him, to whom he had, at different times, given two hundred thousand francs, which he might as well have thrown into the river. If, therefore, Sohier would have wished to have excused himself for this sale taking place, he could not, for, if he had pleased, it never would have been done; but to gratify the king, the dukes of Touraine and Bourbon, and the lord de Coucy, as well as the countess de Blois, who, through avarice, had already consented to every thing, he urged on the count in private, and made him totally forget every thing he had promised his bailiff, and the reversion of the county of Blois was sold for two hundred thousand francs, and the duke de Touraine was to take on himself the payment of the countess de Dunois' jointure of six thousand francs.

There

There was also another sale made, of the reversion of the lands in Hainault, for which the duke of Touraine was likewise to pay two hundred thousand francs.

Count Guy de Blois, indeed, reserved in this last sale the consent of the count de Hainault, the lord paramount of those lands, but who would never insist on his homage for them. The king of France and the duke of Touraine, however, took on them to answer for the consequences, and before they left the count, they bound him so completely in writings sealed, that he could not any way retract, for he had none to advise him but Sohier, who was illiterate, having never had any education, and he was already on their side.

In such a manner were these bargains concluded, which I have detailed as fully as I was able, that in future times the whole truth of the transaction may be made public, by means of these chronicles. In good truth, my lord and patron, count Guy de Blois, like an ignorant and ill-advised person, pushed on by his countess and his valet de chambre, made these miserable sales.

When every thing was concluded relative to this busines, to the satisfaction of the king, the duke of Touraine and their counsellors, they took leave of the count and returned to Paris. The news of these purchases made a great noise in many countries, and astonished all who heard it.

We will speak of sir Roger d'Espaign and sir Espaing du Lyon, and say how they prospered

since they departed from Tours, on the road to Toulouse, where the bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere were waiting for them. Their arrival at Toulouse gave great pleasure, for they had been long expected: they instantly waited on the Commissioners from France, to shew their papers, which they had received from the king, and which fully explained the successful issue of their journey. The bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere entertained them well, and shewed they were much rejoiced at the succession, with all its dependancies, of the count de Foix, devolyed on the viscount de Châteaubon, according to the tenure and form whereby the count Gaston had held them, and in the manner detailed in the written documents.

After considering the busines, they thought it adviseable that sir Roger d'Espaign and sir Espaing du Lyon, who had taken so much pains and incurred so much labour in it, should wait on the viscount de Châteaubon and the councils of Foix and Béarn, to inform them what had been agreed on, that all things might be regularly managed, to bring the whole to a happy conclusion.

The knights consented to this proposal, and, having refreshed themselves two days in Toulouse, set out for Saint Gaudens. The viscount was not there, but at a beautiful castle, at the entrance of Béarn, called Pau, where they found him.

He was happy to see them, having long wished it, but much more so when he learnt that the king of France desisted from taking possession of the

the county of Foix: he knew well where to find the money required for repayment of the mortgage, and that enough would remain after this was done.

I believe my readers, as well as myself, will think I have said enough respecting the affairs of Foix and Béarn: I will therefore leave them, and enter on other matters; for it would take up too much time to pursue in detail every thing that passed there on the return of the two knights from France. To conclude, the viscount de Châteaubon was acknowledged count de Foix and Béarn, on the same terms on which count Gaston de Foix, of happy memory, had held them, and he received the homage of all who were his vassals. He satisfied his two cousins, sir Evan and sir Gracien, the bastards of Foix, by the handsome allotment he gave them of the inheritances and moveables of their father, and repaid, to the commissioners from France, the mortgage that was on Foix. Before all these things were accomplished, summer was far advanced, and the bishop of Noyon remained at Toulouse with the lord de la Riviere; for they would not depart until every thing was completely settled, to the honour and profit of the crown, according to the instructions they had received from the king of France.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

A GRAND ASSEMBLY AT AMIENS, OF THE KING  
AND LORDS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND, TO  
TREAT OF A PEACE BETWEEN THE TWO  
KINGDOMS.

WE will now speak of the grand assembly of the lords of France and England, which was held in the city of Amiens, to treat of a final peace between the two countries, at Mid-lent, in the year of grace 1391. Great preparations were made before the arrival of the lords ; and in particular those made for the king, his three uncles, and many of the great barons and prelates, were very sumptuous. Other lords were desirous to make a figure ; for it was currently reported and believed that king Richard of England intended being there in person, to form acquaintance with those he had never yet seen, but he did not come.

That he had intentions of being there was certain, for he came as far as Dover with his three uncles of Lancaster, York and Gloucester, meaning to cross the sea with them. Many councils were held at Dover, to debate whether the king should proceed further or not ; and the council, having considered all things, decided he should remain in the castle of Dover, and the duke of Gloucester with him. The dukes of Lancaster and York, the

the earl of Huntingdon, the earl of Derby, sir Thomas Percy, the bishop of Durham, the bishop of London and others of the king's council, prepared to cross the channel. They did not all pass over instantly, but sent their purveyances forward, and then crossed themselves to Calais, where they were lodged.

When the day approached for the meeting at Amiens, these lords set out from Calais together; they were more than two hundred horse, and it was a fine sight, for they rode in handsome array. The king of France had given orders that, during the time the conferences should last, all the expenses of the English, in coming to and returning from Amiens to Calais, should be defrayed by his treasury; that is to say, their nourishment as well as that of their horses.

In company with the dukes of Lancaster and York was their niece, daughter of their sister and the lord de Coucy: she was styled duchess of Ireland, having been married to that duke, as you have heard. This young lady came to visit her father at Amiens; for hitherto she had seen but little of him, which made her naturally more anxious now to wait on him. She travelled in good state, but like a widow who had enjoyed but little pleasure in her marriage.

It had been ordered by the king and council of France, that the English lords, who were coming to Amiens to arrange a solid peace, should be received with the greatest honours; and that the four dukes then at Amiens, namely, the dukes of

of Touraine, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, should ride without the town to meet and bid them welcome. As soon, therefore, as the English were near Amiens, these dukes, attended by all the great barons of France, rode forth in grand array. The duke of Touraine took the lead, in great state, and, when he met his cousins of England, they mutually saluted each other, with every respect, as such lords know how to do. When the duke of Touraine had conversed a short time with them, he took his leave, returned to the town with his numerous attendants, and dismounted at the palace of the bishop, where the king resided, remaining with him in his chamber.

The other three dukes, after the departure of the duke of Touraine, rode each with his array to meet the English lords; and, on their meeting, many old acquaintances were renewed with a satisfaction such as was a pleasure to behold. When these dukes had conversed a little, the gallant count dauphin of Auvergne (who, during the time he was a hostage in England, had lived much with the duke of Lancaster, and bore him great affection) advanced his horse, and saluted him: the duke of Lancaster no sooner recollect ed him than he pressed him to his arms, and shewed him every sign of friendship: their conversation was interrupted by the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who joined the duke of Lancaster,

The duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy and the count de St. Pol, rode with the duke of York, the earl of Huntingdon and sir Thomas Percy, conversing

conversing all the way as they approached Amiens. At the entrance of the city, the honours paid the English were increased; for the duke of Lancaster rode between the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and when their horses moved it was but a foot's pace. Their horses heads were in a line, which they took care to keep; and thus these three passed the gates, riding very slowly and paying each other mutual honours, to the palace of the bishop, where the king and the duke of Touraine were. Having dismounted, they ascended the steps; and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, taking the English dukes by their hands, led them towards the king of France, the other lords following,

When in the presence of the king, the three dukes, who supported the uncles of the king of England, and the other French lords, cast themselves on their knees; but the two English dukes remained as they were, inclining gently their heads in honour of the king. The king instantly advanced to them, took their hands, and bade his uncles and the other lords rise, and then entered into a friendly conversation with them, as did the barons of France with those of England. After this first interview, the lords of England took their leave of the king, his brother and uncles, and were attended as far as the steps of the palace, when they mounted their horses, and were escorted to their hôtels by the constable of France, the lord de Coucy, the count de St. Pol, sir John de Vienne, and the other lords of France, who there took leave,

leave, and went back to the king or to their lodgings. The duchess of Ireland was lodged, with her attendants, at her father the lord de Coocy's hotel.

It had been forbidden by the king and council, (and public proclamation had been made before the arrival of the English, that no one might plead ignorance,) that any outrages whatever be committed during the holding of these conferences under pain of death, or any quarrelling with the English, or rice, during their stay in the city of Amiens. All knights and squires were strictly commanded by the king, under pain of incurring his indignation, not to talk of, or propose, any deeds of arms to any knight or squire from England, but to treat them with the utmost civility and attention wherever they should meet, in the fields, the palace, or in church: that no pages nor workers of any lords of France cause riot or quarrels in the towns, under pain of losing their heads; and that whatever the English knights or squires might ask for should be immediately given them: that no innkeeper should demand payment for meat or drink, or other common necessaries.

It was also forbidden any knight or squire of France to be out at night without a torch; but the English might do so, if they pleased; and if any Englishman were found on the roads, or in any other place, having lost his way, he should be discreetly conducted to where he lodged.

Four guards of one thousand men each, were stationed at the four squares of Amiens; and, should

Should there be a fire during the night in any part of the town, these guards were not to move on any account from their posts; but, when the fire-bell rang, those appointed to that duty were to hasten to extinguish it.

It was likewise ordered, that no knight or squire should advance from his place to speak with the king, unless called or spoken to by his majesty; and that, during the time the English barons were in the king's presence, no knight or squire converse together nor address the English.

It was commanded, under heavy penalties, that no innkeeper, or others, steal or put aside, through avarice, any of the bows or arrows of the English; but if, out of courtesy, the English thought proper to give any to them, they might accept such presents.

You must know, that all these orders and regulations were formed with great deliberation of council, to do the more honour to the English who were come to negotiate a peace, and proclaimed several times, that they might be strictly attended to; for, if they were infringed, those guilty of it were to have been punished without mercy.

Every day conferences were held with the English lords, with scarcely any intermission, during the fortnight they staid at Amiens, without coming to any conclusion, for the difference was too great in their demands. The French would have Calais razed to the ground, so that it should never again be habitable. The English would not

listen

listen to this, nor dared they consent to such an article in the treaty; for the commons of England love Calais more than any other town in the world, saying, that as long as they are masters of Calais, they carry the keys of France at their girdle. However great the differences between the lords of England and France in these matters, and the length of time they were occupied on them, they separated with great good humour on both sides from the conferences, saying,—‘ We will again meet to-morrow on this business; and we hope, through our diligence, to bring the matter at last to a happy conclusion.’

The king of France entertained the lords of England three times most magnificently at dinner in the episcopal palace. The duke of Touraine, the duke of Berry, the duke of Burgundy, the duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy, the count de Saint Pol, gave each a dinner to the English commissioners. Whatever the English wanted was delivered them, free of cost, by clerks who were appointed to take an account of all things they had, which they referred to the king’s exchequer for payment.

You must know, that although the dukes of Lancaster and York were at Amiens, they had received such instructions from the king of England and his council, that they could not add to nor alter any of the terms of the treaty they had been charged with. Many persons will not readily believe what I am about to say, though it is strictly true, which is, that the English are fonder of war

than

than of peace. During the reign of king Edward, of happy memory, and in the lifetime of his son the prince of Wales, they made such grand conquests in France, and by their victories and ransoms of towns, castles and men, gained such wealth that the poorest knights became rich; and those who were not gentlemen by birth, by gallantly hazarding themselves in these wars, were ennobled for their valour and wealth. Those who came after them were desirous of following the same road, although sir Bertrand du Guesclin and many other knights of France, as has been related in this history, by their valour and prudence had greatly changed the face of the English possessions in France since the times of king Edward and his son.

Even the duke of Gloucester, son to king Edward, inclined to the opinion of the commons, as did many other knights and squires who were desirous of war to enable them to support their state. This caused great difficulties in forming any treaty of final peace, notwithstanding the king of England was earnest about it. By him and the duke of Lancaster were these conferences holden in the city of Amiens; but they were fearful of angering the commons of England: they indeed would have consented to a peace, if the French would have restored all that had been given them by the treaty of Bretigny, and paid the arrears of fourteen hundred thousand francs, which were unsettled when they recommenced the war.

## CHAP. XXXV.

THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LORDS, NOT BEING ABLE TO AGREE ON THE TERMS OF PEACE, PROLONG THE TRUCE ONE YEAR.—THE ENGLISH, ON THEIR RETURN, ARE ACCOMPANIED BY THE LORD DE CHASTEAU-MORANT, TO BRING BACK THE KING OF ENGLAND'S FINAL ANSWER.

THE conferences were held at Amiens, respecting a peace, with great perseverance and attention on the part of the lords commissioners of each nation. It was wondered why the matter failed; for the duke of Burgundy and the duke of Lancaster were much in earnest to bring it to a happy conclusion, reserving always what was contained in their private instructions, which they dared not to go beyond.

The French, perceiving the English were obstinate in their terms, in order to soften them, offered; if they would consent to raze Calais, the peaceable possession of what they then held in Aquitaine, with nine bishoprics, independent of all other jurisdictions, and payment of the fourteen hundred thousand francs within three years. The duke of Lancaster and his council replied,—‘ We have remained here a long time without concluding any thing, nor shall we be able to finish the business without returning to England, and reporting

to the king our lord, and the three states of the realm, what you have now proposed. Be assured that my brother York and myself will use every diligence, as well as our council who have attended us hither, in ending the matter according to ours and your wishes, with the exception of what you demand concerning Calais; but that we dare not mention, without incurring the hatred of the people. It will be therefore better to remain silent, than to say what would bring blame and hatred against us.'

The king of France was tolerably satisfied with this answer, as were his uncles: they said, that if, when returned to England, they would exert themselves to obtain peace, a trifle on their part should not prevent it; for the war had lasted too long, and caused numberless misfortunes to both countries.

During the assembly at Amiens, the commissioners bethought themselves, that as the truce between France and England would expire on St. John Baptist's day, they might prolong it, for themselves and their allies, without any blame, for one year longer, by sea and land.

With regard to the determination that might be given by the parliament to their proposals, they desired to send two knights with them to England, to bring back the final answer. To this the dukes of Lancaster and York readily assented.

I was told, and believe truly, from the appearances I observed, that the king of France was

very desirous of peace at almost any rate; for there were reports current throughout France, that Amurat had invaded, with a powerful army of Turks, the kingdom of Hungary. This intelligence had been brought by the elder lord Boucicaut, marshal of France, and sir John de Charronge \*, who were lately returned from Greece and parts of Turkey.

The king of France, when younger, had an anxious wish to undertake an expedition against Amurat, and recover Armenia, which the Turks had seized from king Léon, who was then present at the conferences at Amiens. He had stated his grievances to the dukes of Lancaster and York, who knew him well, for he had been in England, to offer his mediation for peace between the two countries, when the king of France was encamped near Sluys.

The king of France, weighing this invasion of the Turks in his mind, and his former promises of support to the king of Armenia, thus spoke to the duke of Lancaster when he took his leave,—‘ Fair cousin, if peace shall be established between us and the king of England, we may undertake an expedition to Turkey, to assist the king of Armenia and the emperor of Constantinople, whom Amurat presses very hard, and recover Armenia from the hands of the Turks. They tell us that Amurat is

---

\* The MS. has Carouge, which is more probable, for he went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land after his combat with James le Gris.

a man of great valour and enterprise, but of a fœt contrary to our faith, which he daily oppresses: we ought, therefore, to unite in its defence; and I entreat, fair cousin, that you will consider of it, and do every thing you can to promote this expedition when returned to England.' The duke of Lancaster promised to comply with his request, and to exert himself so strongly in the matter, that the effects would soon be apparent. Upon this they took leave of each other.

The conferences at Amiens lasted fifteen days, and the lords from England were the first to separate. They carried with them the outlines of a treaty, to lay before the king of England and his council. The duchess of Ireland bade adieu to her father, the lord de Coucy, and accompanied her uncles on their return. All the English, on their road to and from Calais, and while at Amiens, needed not to have expended a farthing unless they chose it, for the king had ordered their whole expenses to be defrayed by his officers.

The duke of Burgundy went to Arras, where he met his duchess, who, during the time of the conferences, had visited Flanders. The dukes of Touraine, Berry and Bourbon remained with the king, whose intention it was to go to Beauvais and Gisors, to amuse himself, and return that way to Paris.

In company with the dukes of Lancaster and York were the two French knights who were sent to England by orders from the king of France; their names were sir John de Châteaumorant and

sir Taupin de Cantemelle ; and they were to bring back the final answer of the king and council of England respecting a general peace.

The English dukes were escorted to Calais by sir Reginald de Roye, the lord de Montaurel and the lord de la Vieville, who then took their leave and returned. The English crossed the channel at their leisure to Dover, where they found the king and the duke of Gloucester waiting for them. A grand council was holden by the king and his lords on all that had passed at Amiens ; the king was well pleased with what his uncles had done there ; but the duke of Gloucester, who was always against any treaty with France, declared, that not any propositions for peace could be determined on till they were laid before the parliament, which ought instantly to be summoned ; and whatever measure the three estates of the realm should resolve on, that ought to be adopted, and none other.

This proposal of the duke of Gloucester was agreed to : indeed they dared not oppose him, for he was too popular with the commons of England. The French knights were told that they must continue their journey to London, otherwise they could not obtain any answer. They were willing to consent to this, as was right, and set out with the king and his lords, the greater part of whom went straight to London ; but the king turned off at Dartford, and took the road to Eltham, where he had a handsome palace. He there staid some little time with the queen, and they came together to Shene, and thence to Windsor, where the

the French knights received an answer; but before I say what that answer was, I must speak of the king of France.

### CHAP. XXXVI.

THE FIRST ILLNESS OF KING CHARLES.—COUNT BERNARD D'ARMAGNAC DOES HOMAGE TO THE KING.—THE LORD DE CHASTELMORANT RETURNS FROM ENGLAND WITH AN ANSWER RESPECTING PEACE.

AFTER the conferences at Amiens, the king of France, unfortunately, and through his imprudence, was seized with a burning fever, for which he was advised to change the air. He was put into a litter and carried to Beauvais, where he remained in the bishop's palace until cured. His brother, the duke of Touraine, and his uncles of Berry and Bourbon, attended him constantly, and there kept their Easter. When the king was perfectly recovered, and able to ride, he went to Gisors, at the entrance of Normandy, for the pleasure of hunting, as there are many large forests in the neighbourhood. During his residence at Gisors, sir Bernard d'Armagnac, brother to the count who died in Italy, came thither in handsome state, accompanied by the dauphin of Auvergne,

whom he met at Paris. As he held the counties of Armagnac and Rodez from the crown of France, he paid the king homage for them, in the usual manner of vassals to their lord paramount for the fiefs they hold. He became now the king of France's man, and, having had the articles of homage properly drawn out and engrossed, he and the dauphin took leave of the king, and returned to Auvergne and Languedoc.

About Ascension-day, the king came to Paris in perfect health, and fixed his residence at the hôtel de Saint Pol, which had been prepared for him, the queen and the duchess of Touraine having arrived there before him.

The lord de Châteaumorant and sir Taupin Cantemelle were all this time waiting in England for an answer. They had attended the feast of Saint George at Windsor, where was a brilliant company of barons, and the king's uncles. The lords who had been at Amiens consulted together, on the promises they had made the king of France, as well as in respect to an answer for the two knights, who were very pressing to have one, and leave to return home. After considering the matter, they thus addressed them: "You Châteaumorant, and you Cantemelle, must know, that at this moment we cannot obtain any answer for you to carry to the king of France. It will be a long time before the parliament will take up the matter, for it does not meet before Michaelmas. But to acquit ourselves, and to excuse you, we write letters fully explanatory of the delay; and

and if you, or any others, will return hither during the sitting of parliament, you shall receive such answer as the three estates of the kingdom shall think proper to give.'

The French knights hearing this, and seeing no probability of having any other answer, replied, — ' In the name of God, we are satisfied with what you now say: write and seal your letters, and we will set out on our return.' This being done, they took leave of the king, and went to London to make preparations for their departure. The king ordered all their expenses to be paid, and had them conducted to Dover, where the bailiff had provided a vessel for them and their horses; but they were detained at Dover five days waiting for a wind. On the sixth it was favourable, and they landed at Boulogne. They took their road through Amiens, and by short days journey arrived at Paris, when they found the king and his lords, for it was Whitsuntide. They delivered their letters, which were immediately read, but I believe no great reliance was put on them, and in a short time, they had other affairs of greater consequence at home to attend to.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

**SIR PETER DE CRAON, THROUGH MALET GLEYSE,  
WAYLAYS SIR OLIVER DE CLIFFON, BEATS AND  
SEVERELY WOUNDS HIM.—THE KING AND  
COUNCIL ARE GREATLY ANGERED THEREAT.**

YOU have before heard how sir Peter de Craon, a knight of high birth and great wealth, was disgraced by the king of France and his brother, as well as the reasons for it; and that, having retired to the court of Brittany, the duke had assured him sir Oliver de Clisson was at the bottom of this business. Some supposed the duke had been instigated to say this from his hatred to the constable, whom he wished to dishonour and destroy. While sir Peter de Craon was with the duke of Brittany, they had frequent conversations on what means they could employ to put sir Oliver to death; for they said, that if he were but destroyed, no one would seek to revenge his loss; and the duke expressed his regret he had not put him to death when in his castle of Ermine, adding, he would willingly give one hundred thousand francs if he could once more have him in his possession.

Sir Peter de Craon, observing the mortal hatred of the duke to Clisson, thought of an extraordinary expedient when meditating alone on this subject, for it is from appearances we must judge. He resolved, whatever might be the consequences, that he

he would himself assassinate the constable, or have it done under his own eyes, and not attend to any thing until the deed were performed, when he would afterwards treat for his pardon. He was no way afraid of what John of Blois or the viscount de Rohan, who had married the constable's two daughters, could do against him: he held them very cheap, for, with the assistance of the duke and his family-connections, he could withstand them both. The house of Blois was much weakened, and the count Guy de Blois had just sold the reversion of that county to the duke of Touraine, which by succession ought to have descended to John of Brittany, who had in this sale been very unkindly treated by the count de Blois. Now, if the constable were slain, by degrees he would soon get the better of the favourites of the king and the duke of Touraine, such as the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, Montagu, le bègue de Villaines, sir John de Bueil, and others in the king's confidence who were friends of the constable, and whom the dukes of Berry and Burgundy detested, notwithstanding the outward marks of friendship they shewed them.

Sir Peter de Craon persevered in his abominable designs, urged on by that enemy who never sleeps, and who delights in the heart of the wicked man that is inclined towards him. He regularly formed his whole plan, in the manner I shall mention; but, had he foreseen the great evils and mischiefs that ensued from them, it is to be hoped reason and temperance would have ruled in his heart to prevent

prevent them from being put into execution. It is truly said, that a too great desire to accomplish an object clouds the understanding, and that vicious inclinations overrule virtue. Thus it happened to sir Peter de Craon, whose eagerness to destroy the constable made him listen to the counsels of folly and madness.

He had secured a safe retreat with the duke of Brittany, after the deed should be done and the constable dead, without fear of any search being there made for him, for the duke had promised him an asylum; and, should the king of France follow him with a powerful army to Brittany, in one night he could embark and sail for Bayonne, Bourdeaux or England, where he could not come after him. The English mortally hated Clifton, for his great severity to them from the time he had turned to the French: before that period he was strongly connected with them, and had done the crown essential services, as you have had it related in this history.

Sir Peter de Craon long brooded over this intended deed, without mentioning it to any one: I know not if he even told it to the duke of Brittany. Some think he must have disclosed it to him; but others thought the contrary: the first opinion, however, was strengthened, if not confirmed, by sir Peter and his accomplices returning by the shortest road, and as expeditiously as possible, to Brittany, instantly after the assassination, as to a place of refuge. In addition to this, he sold all the castles and estates he held in Anjou to the

the duke of Brittany, and had renounced his allegiance to the king of France, under pretence of taking a journey to the Holy Land: I shall not say more of these surmises, but relate the fact; for I, the author of this history, was at Paris when this misfortune happened to sir Oliver de Clisson, and ought therefore to be well informed from the inquiries I made concerning it.

You must know, that at this period sir Peter de Craon had a very handsome house near the church-yard of Saint John at Paris \*, like other great lords, to receive him, when he came to that city. This hôtel was, in his absence, under the care of a house-steward; and, during the last Lent season, he had sent varlets thither for his service, with orders to lay in a large store of wines, and all sorts of provision. He had likewise written to the steward to purchase for him armour, such as coats of mail, gauntlets, steel helmets, and other things sufficient for forty men, and to let him know when they were provided, that he might send for them; but to ob-

---

\* \* \* The street of the *Mauvais-garçons*, in the rue des Bouberies, took its name from a sign. With regard to the other rue des *Mauvais-garçons*, which leads from the rue de la Verrerie to that of la Tixeranderie, it was formerly called rue de Chârtron; but when the lords de Craon built a house there, which is now a church-yard, it was called rue de Craon, to the time when Peter de Craon hid himself and accomplices within it, to assassinate sir Oliver de Clisson. The street then changed its name, and was called la rue des *Mauvais-garçons*. The hôtel was, by orders from the king, razed to the ground, and the spot given to the church-wardens of St. John, to enlarge their church-yard. — *Savoir Antiquités de Paris.*

serve the greatest secrecy in the business. The steward, thinking so little, obeyed the orders, and provided the amount; during which time, sir Peter resided at a handsome castle of his in Anjou, called Sablé, from whence he sent at different times four or more determined fellows, in the most secret manner possible, to his hotel in Paris. He said to them nothing more when they left him, but — ‘When you arrive at my hotel in Paris, make yourselves comfortable, and ask the house-steward for whatever you may want, who will instantly give it to you; but do not, on any account, pass the gates or shew yourselves. I will one day satisfy you well for your obedience, and pay you handsome wages.’

Upon this, they departed, and journeyed to Paris, which they entered at their pleasure; for in those days the gates were never shut night nor day. At length, they amounted to forty courageous bravos, for such were what sir Peter wanted. There were several among them who, had they known the business they were engaged in, would not have come; but sir Peter took good care not to betray his secret. About the feasts of Whitsuntide, sir Peter de Craon came to his hôtel in Paris, not in state, but as privately as his men had done. On his arrival, he asked for the porter, and said; ‘I command thee, under pain of having thy eyes thrust out, not to admit either man or woman into the hôtel, nor permit any one to go out, without my special orders.’ The porter, as well as the house-steward,

pro-

promised obedience. He shut up in their chambers the wife of the latter, her children and the chambermaid. He was in the right to do this. Had these women or children gone into the street, his arrival would have been known ; for young children and women naturally tell all they see, and what is intended to be concealed.

Thus, as I have related, were the whole of his people confined within the walls of the hôtel, until the feast of the holy sacrament. You may suppose, that sir Peter had his spies fully employed, to bring him intelligence ; but it was not until the eve of this feast he found a fit opportunity to execute his scheme, which had vexed him much.

It happened that, on the feast of the holy sacrament, the king of France kept an open court at the hôtel de St. Pol, where he entertained all barons and lords who were in Paris. He was in high enjoyment, as were the queen and the duchess of Touraine : to add to their amusements, after the dinner, lists were prepared within the courts of the hôtel, and young knights and squires, ready armed and mounted for tilting, came thither, and jested very gallantly. The tiltings were well performed, to the delight of the king, queen, ladies and damsels, and lasted until the evening. The prize for the best tilter was adjudged by the queen, the duchess of Touraine, and the ladies and heralds appointed to the office, to sir William de Flandres, count de Namur.

what his real intentions were. He had advanced to the causeway, near the place of St. Catherine, where he and his people lay hid, waiting for the constable to pass. As soon as the constable had left the street of St. Pol, and turned into the square of the great street, advancing a foot's pace, with a torch on each side to light him, he began a conversation with one of his squires, saying, — ‘I am to have at dinner, to-morrow, my lord of Touraine, the lord de Coucy, sir John de Vienne, sir Charles d'Angers, the baron d'Ivry and several more: be sure take care they have all things comfortable, and let nothing be spared.’ As he said this, sir Peter de Craon and his company advanced, and, without saying a word, fell on the constable's attendants and extinguished the torches. The constable, hearing the clatter of the horses behind him, thought it was the duke of Touraine who was playing him a trick, and cried out, — ‘My lord, by my faith, this is very ill done; but I excuse it, for you are so young you make a joke of every thing.’ At these words, sir Peter de Craon, drawing his sword from the scabbard, said, — ‘Death, death! Clinton, you must die.’ ‘Who art thou,’ said Clinton, ‘that utterest such words?’ ‘I am Peter de Craon, thy enemy, whom thou hast so often angered, and thou shalt now pay for it.’ Then, calling to his people, he said, — ‘Advance, advance! I have found him I was in search of, and whom I have long wanted to seize.’ He then struck him several blows, and his men, drawing their swords, fell on him. Sir Oliver was

quit

whom he met at Paris. As he held the counties of Armagnac and Rodez from the crown of France, he paid the king homage for them, in the usual manner of vassals to their lord paramount for the fiefs they hold. He became now the king of France's man, and, having had the articles of homage properly drawn out and engrossed, he and the dauphin took leave of the king, and returned to Auvergne and Languedoc.

About Ascension-day, the king came to Paris in perfect health, and fixed his residence at the hôtel de Saint Pol, which had been prepared for him, the queen and the duchess of Touraine having arrived there before him.

The lord de Châteaumorant and sir Taupin Cantemelle were all this time waiting in England for an answer. They had attended the feast of Saint George at Windsor, where was a brilliant company of barons, and the king's uncles. The lords who had been at Amiens consulted together, on the promises they had made the king of France, as well as in respect to an answer for the two knights, who were very pressing to have one, and leave to return home. After considering the matter, they thus addressed them: 'You Châteaumorant, and you Cantemelle, must know, that at this moment we cannot obtain any answer for you to carry to the king of France. It will be a long time before the parliament will take up the matter, for it does not meet before Michaelmas. But to acquit ourselves, and to excuse you, we will write letters fully explanatory of the delay; and

and if you, or any others, will return hither during the sitting of parliament, you shall receive such answer as the three estates of the kingdom shall think proper to give.'

The French knights hearing this, and seeing no probability of having any other answer, replied, 'In the name of God, we are satisfied with what you now say: write and seal your letters, and we will set out on our return.' This being done, they took leave of the king, and went to London to make preparations for their departure. The king ordered all their expenses to be paid, and had them conducted to Dover, where the bailiff had provided a vessel for them and their horses; but they were detained at Dover five days waiting for a wind. On the sixth it was favourable, and they landed at Boulogne. They took their road through Amiens, and by short days journey arrived at Paris, when they found the king and his lords, for it was Whitsuntide. They delivered their letters, which were immediately read, but I believe no great reliance was put on them, and in a short time, they had other affairs of greater consequence at home to attend to.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

SIR PETER DE CRAON, THROUGH MALEVOLENCE,  
 WAYLAYS SIR OLIVERDE CLISSON, BEATS AND  
 SEVERELY WOUNDS HIM.—THE KING AND  
 COUNCIL ARE GREATLY ANGERED THEREAT.

YOU have before heard how sir Peter de Craon, a knight of high birth and great wealth, was disgraced by the king of France and his brother, as well as the reas ons for it; and that, having retired to the court of Brittany, the duke had assured him sir Oliver de Clisson was at the bottom of this busine s. Some suppo sed the duke had been instigated to say this from his hatred to the constable, whom he wished to dishonour and de stroy. While sir Peter de Craon was with the duke of Brittany, they had frequent conversations on what means they could employ to put sir Oliver to death; for they said, that if he were but de stroyed, no one would seek to revenge his los s; and the duke expressed his regret he had not put him to death when in his castle of Ermine, adding, he would willingly give one hundred thousand francs if he could once more have him in his posse ssion.

Sir Peter de Craon, ob serving the mortal hatred of the duke to Clisson, thought of an extraordinary expedient when meditating alone on this subject, for it is from appearances we must judge. He re solved, whatever might be the consequences, that he

he would himself assassinate the constable, or have it done under his own eyes, and not attend to any thing until the deed were performed, when he would afterwards treat for his pardon. He was no way afraid of what John of Blois or the viscount de Rohan, who had married the constable's two daughters, could do against him: he held them very cheap, for, with the assistance of the duke and his family-connections, he could withstand them both. The house of Blois was much weakened, and the count Guy de Blois had just sold the reversion of that county to the duke of Touraine, which by succession ought to have descended to John of Brittany, who had in this sale been very unkindly treated by the count de Blois. Now, if the constable were slain, by degrees he would soon get the better of the favourites of the king and the duke of Touraine, such as the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, Montagu, le b<sup>e</sup>gue de Villaines, sir John de Bueil, and others in the king's confidence who were friends of the constable, and whom the dukes of Berry and Burgundy detested, notwithstanding the outward marks of friendship they shewed them.

Sir Peter de Craon persevered in his abominable designs, urged on by that enemy who never sleeps, and who delights in the heart of the wicked man that is inclined towards him. He regularly formed his whole plan, in the manner I shall mention; but, had he foreseen the great evils and mischiefs that ensued from them, it is to be hoped reason and temperance would have ruled in his heart to prevent

prevent them from being put into execution. It is truly said, that a too great desire to accomplish an object clouds the understanding, and that vicious inclinations overrule virtue. Thus it happened to sir Peter de Craon, whose eagerness to destroy the constable made him listen to the counsels of folly and madness.

He had secured a safe retreat with the duke of Brittany, after the deed should be done and the constable dead, without fear of any search being there made for him, for the duke had promised him an asylum; and, should the king of France follow him with a powerful army to Brittany, in one night he could embark and sail for Bayonne, Bourdeaux or England, where he could not come after him. The English mortally hated Clisson, for his great severity to them from the time he had turned to the French: before that period he was strongly connected with them, and had done the crown essential services, as you have had it related in this history.

Sir Peter de Craon long brooded over this intended deed, without mentioning it to any one: I know not if he even told it to the duke of Brittany. Some think he must have disclosed it to him; but others thought the contrary: the first opinion, however, was strengthened, if not confirmed, by sir Peter and his accomplices returning by the shortest road, and as expeditiously as possible, to Brittany, instantly after the assassination, as to a place of refuge. In addition to this, he sold all the castles and estates he held in Anjou to the

the duke of Brittany, and had renounced his allegiance to the king of France, under pretence of taking a journey to the Holy Land. I shall not say more of these surmises, but relate the fact; for I, the author of this history, was at Paris when this misfortune happened to sir Oliver de Clisson, and ought therefore to be well informed from the inquiries I made concerning it.

You must know, that at this period sir Peter de Craon had a very handsome house near the church-yard of Saint John at Paris \*, like other great lords, to receive him, when he came to that city. This hôtel was, in his absence, under the care of a house-steward; and, during the last Lent season, he had sent varlets thither for his service, with orders to lay in a large store of wines, and all sorts of provision. He had likewise written to the steward to purchase for him armour, such as coats of mail, gauntlets, steel helmets, and other things sufficient for forty men, and to let him know when they were provided, that he might send for them, but to ob-

\* The street of the *Mauvais-garçons*, in the rue des Bouceries, took its name from a sign. With regard to the other rue des *Mauvais-garçons*, which leads from the rue de la Verrerie to that of la Tixeranderie, it was formerly called rue de Chartron; but when the lords de Craon built a house there, which is now a church-yard, it was called rue de Craon, to the time when Peter de Craon hid himself and accomplices within it, to assassinate sir Oliver de Clisson. The street then changed its name, and was called la rue des *Mauvais-garçons*. The hôtel was, by orders from the king, razed to the ground, and the spot given to the church-wardens of St. John, to enlarge their church-yard. — *Savoir Antiquités de Paris.*

serve the greatest secrecy in the business. The steward, thinking no harm, obeyed the orders, and provided the armour; during which time, sir Peter resided at a handsome castle of his in Anjou, called Sablé, from whence he sent at different times four or more determined fellows, in the most secret manner possible, to his hôtel in Paris. He said to them nothing more when they left him, but — ‘When you arrive at my house in Paris, make yourselves comfortable, and ask the house-steward for whatever you may want, who will instantly give it to you; but do not, on any account, pass the gates or shew yourselves. I will one day satisfy you well for your obedience, and pay you handsome wages.’

Upon this, they departed, and journeyed to Paris, which they entered at their pleasure; for in those days the gates were never shut night nor day. At length, they amounted to forty courageous bravos, for such were what sir Peter wanted. There were several among them who, had they known the business they were engaged in, would not have come; but sir Peter took good care not to betray his secret. About the feasts of Whitsuntide, sir Peter de Craon came to his hôtel in Paris, not in state, but as privately as his men had done. On his arrival, he asked for the porter, and said; ‘I command thee, under pain of having thy eyes thrust out, not to admit either man or woman into the hôtel, nor permit any one to go out, without my special orders.’ The porter, as well as the house-steward,

pro-

promised obedience. He shut up in their chambers the wife of the latter, her children and the chambermaid. He was in the right to do this. Had these women or children gone into the street, his arrival would have been known ; for young children and women naturally tell all they see, and what is intended to be concealed.

Thus, as I have related, were the whole of his people confined within the walls of the hôtel, until the feast of the holy sacrament. You may suppose, that sir Peter had his spies fully employed, to bring him intelligence ; but it was not until the eve of this feast he found a fit opportunity to execute his scheme, which had vexed him much.

It happened that, on the feast of the holy sacrament, the king of France kept an open court at the hôtel de St. Pol, where he entertained all barons and lords who were in Paris. He was in high enjoyment, as were the queen and the duchess of Touraine : to add to their amusements, after the dinner, lists were prepared within the courts of the hôtel, and young knights and squires, ready armed and mounted for tilting, came thither, and jested very gallantly. The tiltings were well performed, to the delight of the king, queen, ladies and damsels, and lasted until the evening. The prize for the best tilter was adjudged by the queen, the duchess of Touraine, and the ladies and heralds appointed to the office, to sir William de Flandres, count de Namur.

The king entertained at supper, in the hôtel de Saint Pol, every knight who wished to partake of it ; and, afterward, the dancings continued until one o'clock in the morning. When these were over, every one retired to his home, without guard and without suspicion. Sir Oliver de Clisson remained the last ; and, when he had taken leave of the king, he returned to the apartment of the duke of Touraine, and asked, ‘ My lord, shall you stay here to-night, or do you go to Poulain’s ?’ This Poulain was treasurer to the duke of Touraine, and lived at the Croix du Tiroir, near the Silver Lion.

The duke replied,—‘ Constable, I am not determined whether I shall stay or not ; but do you go, for it is high time to retire.’ ‘ My lord, God give you a good night !’ said sir Oliver, and went away. He found his servants and horses waiting for him in the square before the hôtel ; but they had not more than eight or ten torches, which the varlets lighted. When the constable was mounted, and the torches were borne before him, he rode down the broad street of St. Catherine.

Sir Peter de Craon’s spies had this day exerted themselves, and he knew every particular relative to the constable,—of his staying behind the rest of the company, the exact number of his horses and attendants. He had, in consequence, quitted his hôtel with his men all mounted and secretly armed ; but there were not six of them who knew what

what his real intentions were. He had advanced to the causeway, near the place of St. Catherine, where he and his people lay hid, waiting for the constable to pass. As soon as the constable had left the street of St. Pol, and turned into the square of the great street, advancing a foot's pace, with a torch on each side to light him, he began a conversation with one of his squires, saying,—‘ I am to have at dinner, to-morrow, my lord of Touraine, the lord de Coucy, sir John de Vienne, sir Charles d'Angers, the baron d'Ivry and several more: be sure take care they have all things comfortable, and let nothing be spared.’ As he said this, sir Peter de Craon and his company advanced, and, without saying a word, fell on the constable's attendants and extinguished the torches. The constable, hearing the clatter of the horses behind him, thought it was the duke of Touraine who was playing him a trick, and cried out,—‘ My lord, by my faith, this is very ill done; but I excuse it, for you are so young you make a joke of every thing.’ At these words, sir Peter de Craon, drawing his sword from the scabbard, said,—‘ Death, death! Clisson, you must die.’ ‘ Who art thou,’ said Clisson, ‘ that utterest such words?’ ‘ I am Peter de Craon, thy enemy, whom thou hast so often angered, and thou shalt now pay for it.’ Then, calling to his people, he said,—‘ Advance, advance! I have found him I was in search of, and whom I have long wanted to seize.’ He then struck him several blows, and his men, drawing their swords, fell on him. Sir Oliver was quite

quite unarmed, having only a short cutlass, not two feet long, which, however, he drew, and defended himself with it as well as he could. His servants, being quite defenceless, were soon dispersed. Some of sir Peter's men asked, if they were to murder all? 'Yes,' replied he, 'all who put themselves in a posture of defence.'

They could not resist the attack, for they were but eight, and without armour. Sir Peter's men fully intended to murder the constable, and their master wished nothing more than to see it done; but, as I heard from some of those who had been in this attack, the moment they learnt that the person they were assassinating was the constable of France, their arms became, as it were, nerveless through surprise, and their blows were given weakly and through fear, for in perpetrating wickedness none are bold.

The constable parried the blows tolerably well with his short cutlass; but his defence would have been of no avail, if God's providence had not protected him. He kept, steady on horseback some time, until he was villainously struck on the back part of his head, which knocked him off his horse. In his fall, he hit against the hatch of a baker's door, who was already up to attend to his business and bake his bread. Having heard the noise of horses on the causeway and high words, the baker had, fortunately for the constable, half opened the hatch; and sir Oliver, falling against it, burst it quite open and rolled into the shop. Those on horseback could not follow him, as the

entrance

entrance was neither wide nor high enough, and besides, they did their work like cowards.

It must be owned for truth, that God shewed great favour to the constable: if he had not exactly fallen against the hatch, or if it had been closed, he would infallibly have lost his life, and have been trampled to death by the horses, for they were afraid to dismount. Several of them imagined, even sir Peter de Craon and the person who had hit him, that the blow on his head which unhorfed him must cause his death: sir Peter, therefore, said, — ‘ Come, let us away: we have done enough: if he be not dead, he can never recover from the last blow, which was given by a lusty arm.’ On saying this, they collected together and left the place at a good trot, and were soon at the gate of Saint Anthony, which they passed, and gained the fields; for since the battle of Rosebecque, ten years ago, the gates were never shut. The Parisians had then their mallets taken from them by the constable, and many of the citizens punished and fined for their imprudent conduct, as I have fully narrated.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS HIS OWN PHYSICIANS AND SURGEONS TO VISIT THE CONSTABLE DURING THE NIGHT.—HE ORDERS THE PROVOST OF PARIS TO PURSUE SIR PETER DE CRAON, WHO HAD FLED FOR REFUGE TO THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.—SOME OF HIS MEN, HAVING REMAINED AT PARIS, ARE EXECUTED.

THUS was sir Oliver de Clisson left for dead at the baker's, who was much frightened when he learnt it was the constable. Sir Oliver's attendants, who had been little hurt, for sir Peter de Craon's men were only bent on killing their master, collected together as well as they could, and, dismounting before the baker's door, entered the shop, where they found their lord severely wounded on the head, and his face covered with blood. They were, as may be supposed, greatly affected, and with tears and groans bewailed his loss, for at the first moment they thought he was a dead man.

News of this was carried to the king at the hôtel de Saint Pol, just as he was going into bed. In much alarm, they said, 'Ah, fire! we dare not conceal from you a shocking event that has just happened in Paris.' 'What event?' asked the king. 'Your constable, sir Oliver de Clisson, is murdered.' 'Murdered!' repeated the king.

'How?

‘ How? and who has done it?’ ‘ Sire, that we do not know; but this misfortune has befallen him hard by, in the great street of St. Catherine.’ ‘ Come, quickly light torches, for I will go and see him,’ replied the king.

The torches being ready, the varlets bore them before; and the king threw only a cloak over him, while the shoes were putting on his feet. The men at arms and ushers of the guard of the palace escorted him.

Those who were gone to bed, on hearing what had passed, instantly dressed themselves to follow the king, who had left the hôtel de Saint Pol in such haste that sir Walter Martel and sir John de Lignac were the only chamberlains that attended him, for he would not wait for others, and thus he walked at a good pace with torches before and behind him.

In this manner he arrived at the baker’s shop, which he entered; but the chamberlains, with many torches, staid without.

The king found his constable nearly in the state he had heard him to be in, except that he was not dead; for his servants had stript him to see if he had received many wounds, and where they had been given. The first words the king said, were, ‘ Constable, how fares it with you?’ ‘ Dear sire,’ replied he, ‘ but so so, and very weak.’ ‘ And who has put you in this state?’ ‘ Sire, Peter de Craon and his accomplices have traitorously, and without the smallest suspicion, attacked me.’ ‘ Constable,’ said the king, ‘ nothing shall ever

B b 2 be

be more severely punished than this crime, nor can any sufferings make amends for it: run quickly,' added the king, 'for doctors and surgeons.' These were before sent for; and they arrived from all quarters, particularly those attached to the king's person. On their arrival, the king was well pleased, and said,—'Attend well to my constable, and tell me what state he is in; for I am sorely grieved at his misfortune.'

The doctors, having declared they would, examined him all over, the king being present, who was greatly angered at this event: he asked, 'if there were any danger of death?' The doctors unanimously replied,—'Sire, certainly not; and, within fifteen days, we will restore him to you well enough to ride on horseback.'

This answer pleased the king, who said, 'God be praised, this is excellent news.' Then, addressing himself to the constable, added; 'Take care of yourself, and do not think of this or other business: no crime shall be more rigorously punished than that of these traitors: they shall pay for it as if it were done to myself.' The constable faintly answered, 'May God repay you all, and for your kindness in this visit.'

On this, the king took leave and returned to his palace, and sent for the provost of Paris, who made no long delay before he arrived, for it was now quite day. When the provost entered, the king said,—'Take with you a body of armed men, and pursue that traitor, Peter de Craon, who has treacherously assassinated, and nearly murdered, our constable.'

constable. You cannot do us a more agreeable service than to take him and bring him before us.' The provost replied; ' Sire, I will do every thing in my power; but what road do you suppose he may have taken?' ' Inquire, and make good diligence,' said the king. At that time, the four principal gates of Paris were always open night and day: this regulation had been observed from the time the king returned from Flanders, after defeating the Flemings at the battle of Rosebecque; and when the Parisians, shewing symptoms of rebellion, had their mallets taken from them. In order the more easily to chastise the Parisians, sir Oliver de Clisson had advised the chains to be taken from across the streets, and the gates off their hinges, which had been done; and the gates had been, for these last ten years, lying against the walls, so that any one might enter, or go out of Paris, at all hours. Now, observe how the seasons repay, sir Oliver reaped what he had sown himself: had the gates and chains remained, sir Peter de Craon would not have dared to commit this outrage, for he could never have got out of Paris, but, knowing he could set off at any hour, he was encouraged thus to disgrace himself. When he left the constable, he concluded he was dead, or at least that he would never recover; but it was not so, as you have heard, to his great mortification. He quitted Paris by St. Anthony's gate, about one o'clock in the morning, and, as some say, crossed the Seine at the bridge of Charenton, and continued his road to Chartres; but, according to

others, after going out of Paris, he returned by the gate of St. Honoré, under Montmartre, and crossed the Seine at Ponthon\*. Whichever way he passed the river, he arrived at Chartres at eight o'clock in the morning, with some of the best mounted of his accomplices. All did not follow, but took different routes, and in small companies, to avoid being taken in the pursuit.

On his way to Paris, he had ordered twenty horses to be in waiting for him, at the house of a canon, who was his friend, and had served him; but it would have been better for him never to have known him, although the canon was ignorant of the crime he had committed. Sir Peter de Craon, on his arrival at Chartres, drank some wine and changed horses, and then instantly departed, taking the road for Maine. He continued his journey, until he came to a strong castle he still possessed, called Sablé, where he stopped and refreshed himself, and said he would not go further, but wait there until he heard some intelligence of the constable.

On the Friday, the day following this assassination, it was all the news of Paris, and every one greatly blamed sir Peter de Craon. The lord de Coucy was no sooner informed of it, than he mounted his horse, attended by only seven persons, and rode to the constable's hotel, behind the Temple, whither he had been carried; for they mutually loved each other, styling themselves bro-

---

\* Ponthon. Q. Pontoise.

thers and companions in arms. This interview with the lord de Coucy was of service to the constable; and he was visited by all the other lords of the court.

The duke of Touraine accompanied the king in his next visit: the two brothers were very wroth, and said sir Peter de Craon had committed this crime in spite of them; and that it was a plot formed by traitors to throw the kingdom into confusion. The duke of Berry, who was at the time in Paris, dissembled his sentiments, and seemed to make light of what had passed. I, the author of this history, was then informed, that, if he had pleased, this accident would not have happened, for it was in his power to have prevented it, and I will tell you how.

The day of the feast of the holy sacrament, a clerk, who was one of the familiars of sir Peter de Craon, came to the duke of Berry, and said; ‘ My lord, I would willingly open my mind to you, respecting some improper conduct that is going forward, which is illegal, and may end unfortunately, for you are more able than any other to put a stop to it.’ ‘ What is it?’ asked the duke. ‘ My lord, I must first insist that you promise my name shall never be brought into question; for, to prevent great mischief being done, and the peril that may ensue in the matter, I am come to discover the whole to you.’ ‘ Speak out then, boldly,’ replied the duke: ‘ I will bear you through it.’

‘ My lord,’ said the clerk, ‘ I very much i

pect that sir Peter de Craon intends murdering the constable; for he has collected, within his hôtel, in the church-yard of St. John, a number of companions, whom he has secretly kept there, ever since Whitsuntide. Should he accomplish his purpose, the king will be exceedingly vexed, and confusion ensue to the kingdom. It is for this I disclose it to you, my lord; for, although I am secretary to my lord of Craon, and have sworn fidelity to him, I cannot suffer such an outrage to be committed. If you do not take measures to prevent this, none other will, at this moment, and I beg you will remember what I have now told you, at a proper opportunity; for, since I find sir Peter de Craon is determined to persevere in this business, I must fly, and never again return to his service.'

The duke of Berry perfectly well comprehended all the clerk had told. He said to him; ' Remain with me to-day, and to-morrow morning I will inform my lord of this plot. It is now too late, and I wish not to trouble the king on such a day as this, but, to-morrow, I will not fail doing it; and we will provide a remedy, since sir Peter de Craon is in the town, which I was ignorant of.' Thus, by the delay and negligence of the duke of Berry, did the mischief happen, as I have related.

The provost of Paris, with upwards of sixty horse, issued out at the gate of St. Honoré, on the traces of sir Peter de Craon. When he came to Pontoise, to cross the Seine, he asked the bridge-

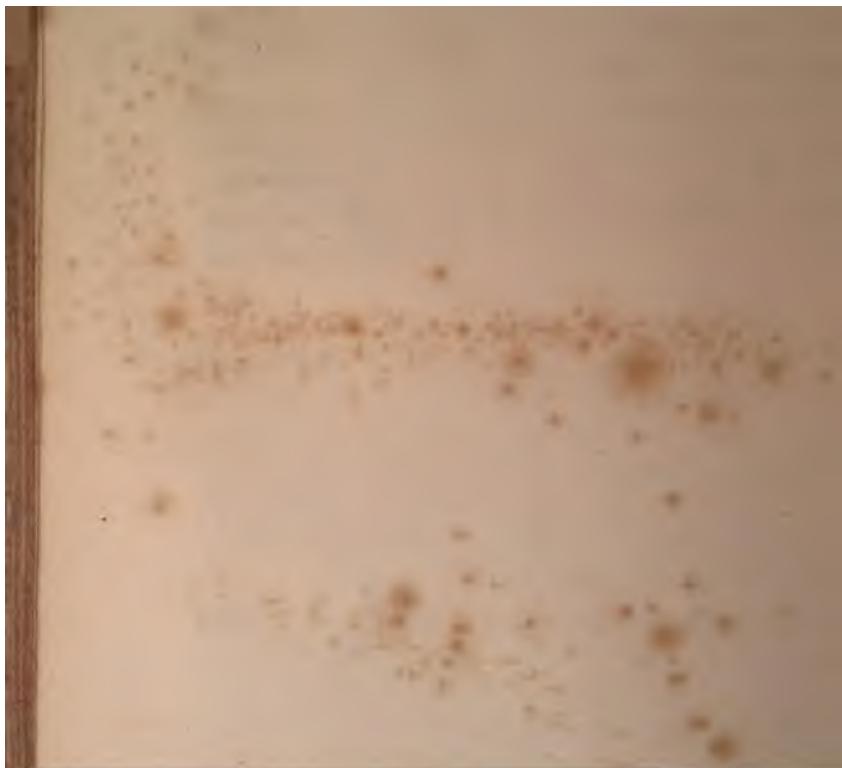
bridge-keeper, if any one had passed that morning? He answered, 'Yes, my lord, a company of about twelve horsemen; but I did not see any knight or person whom I knew.' 'And what road did they take?' demanded the provost. 'That leading to Vannes,' said the bridge-master. 'Ah,' replied the provost, 'it may very probably be they, who are making for Cherbourg.' He then quitted the road to Chartres, following that to Cherbourg, and thus lost all traces of them. When they had rode on the road to Vannes till it was dinner-time, they met a knight of that country hare-hunting; and, making inquiry from him, he said, that he had seen in the morning about fifteen horsemen riding over the fields, and he thought they were going to Chartres. Upon this, the provost again changed his road, and, arriving in the evening at Chartres, learnt that sir Peter de Craon had been at the canon's house about eight o'clock, where he had disarmed himself and changed horses. He now saw that all further pursuit would be vain, as sir Peter had got so much before him, and returned to Paris on the Saturday.

The king of France and the duke of Touraine were very anxious to lay hands on sir Peter de Craon; and, as it was uncertain what road he had taken, they ordered sir John le Barrois, with sixty horse, after him by the gate of Saint Anthony. Sir John crossed the Seine and Marne at the bridge of Charenton, and scoured the whole country as far as Estampes. On Saturday he arrived

open, by which means he rolled into the shop. Had he fallen in the street, we would have killed him and trampled him under our horses feet.'

' Well,' said the duke, ' it cannot be otherwise at present. I am sure it will not be long before I hear from the king of France, and shall incur as much hatred as yourself. Keep quiet near me; for I am convinced things will not remain as they now are, but that the king and constable will wage a serious war against me. However, since I promised you protection, I will keep my word.'







Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 013 516 971

DATE DUE

---

---

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES  
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA  
94305

